



SIGN+ Guides

Version: 2023.1.0 FP2

Copyright AppViewX, Inc.

Copyright © 2024 AppViewX, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

This document may not be copied, disclosed, transferred, or modified without the prior written consent of AppViewX, Inc. While all content is believed to be correct at the time of publication, it is provided as general-purpose information. The content is subject to change without notice and is provided “as is” and with no expressed or implied warranties whatsoever, including, but not limited to, a warranty for accuracy made by AppViewX. The software described in this document is provided under written license only, contains valuable trade secrets and proprietary information, and is protected by the copyright laws of the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use of software or its documentation can result in civil damages and criminal prosecution.

Trademarks

The trademarks, logos, and service marks displayed in this manual are the property of AppViewX or other third parties. Users are not permitted to use these marks without the prior written consent of AppViewX or such third party which may own the mark.

External Reference Links

This product includes software developed by the CentOS Project (www.centos.org).

This product includes software developed by Red Hat, Inc. (www.redhat.com).

This product includes software developed by VMware, Inc. (www.vmware.com).

All other trademarks mentioned in this document are the property of their respective owners.

Contact Information

AppViewX, Inc.

222 Broadway, FL 19

New York, NY 10038

Email: info@appviewx.com

Web: www.appviewx.com

Contents

Preface.....	8
Revision History.....	8
About this Guide.....	8
Audience.....	8
Text Conventions.....	8
Chapter 1. SIGN+ User Guide.....	9
Introduction.....	9
Code Signing.....	9
Code Signing Certificate.....	13
Signing Policy.....	15
TimeStamping.....	17
Getting Started.....	19
Overview.....	19
Prerequisites.....	21
Accessing SIGN+.....	21
Downloading the CSP/PKCS#11 Package.....	22
Certificate Actions.....	24
Certificate Enrollment.....	25
Certificate Revocation.....	37
Revocation Check for Code Signing Certificate.....	40
Generating CSR for Code Signing Certificate.....	41
Certificate Inventory.....	44
Code Signing.....	44
Signing Inventory.....	63
Upload and sign.....	63
Accessing Signing Inventory.....	65
Integration with CI/CD pipeline.....	66

Need for Code Signing.....	66
Integrating Code Signing in Jenkins Pipeline.....	66
Integrating Code Signing in GitLab Pipeline.....	70
Appendix.....	75
Integrating SIGN+ using Native Tools.....	76
Signtool.....	76
JARSigner.....	78
APKSigner.....	82
JSign.....	85
Chapter 2. SIGN+ Admin Guide.....	89
Certificate Authority.....	89
Configuring CA Settings.....	89
Certificate Group.....	204
Before you Begin.....	204
Assign Certificate to a Group.....	205
Create a Group.....	206
Modify a Group.....	209
Delete a Group.....	210
Unassign Certificate from a Group.....	210
CA Policy.....	211
Configuring Policy Details.....	213
Configuring Policy for Amazon CA.....	215
Configuring Policy for Amazon Private CA.....	217
Configuring Policy for Digicert CA.....	221
Configuring Policy for EJBCA CA.....	226
Configuring Policy for Entrust CA.....	229
Configuring Policy for Entrust MPKI CA.....	233
Configuring Policy for GlobalSign CA.....	236
Configuring Policy for GlobalSign MSSL CA.....	240

Configuring Policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA.....	244
Configuring Policy for GoDaddy CA.....	248
Configuring Policy for Google CA.....	252
Configuring Policy for HashiCorp Vault CA.....	259
Configuring Policy for HydrantID CA.....	263
Configuring Policy for Let's Encrypt CA.....	267
Configuring Policy for Microsoft Enterprise CA.....	271
Configuring Policy for Microsoft Standalone CA.....	274
Configuring Policy for Nexus CA.....	278
Configuring Policy for OpenTrust CA.....	282
Configuring Policy for Sectigo CA.....	286
Configuring Policy for Symantec CA.....	290
Configuring Policy for Trustwave CA.....	293
Signing Policy.....	297
Key Aspects Covered by Signing Policies.....	298
Configuring Signing Policy.....	298
Sign Logs.....	302
Viewing Sign Logs.....	303
Exporting Logs.....	304
Password Vault.....	304
Configuring Certificate Attributes and Tags.....	305
Adding Attribute Information.....	306
Updating Certificate Attributes.....	307
Deleting Certificate Attributes.....	307
Viewing Certificate Attributes in Certificate Inventory.....	307
Configuring Certificate Profiles.....	308
Adding a Certificate Profile.....	309
Updating a Certificate Profile.....	310
Deleting a Certificate Profile.....	310

Expired Certificates.....	311
History of Certificates.....	313
Job Scheduler.....	313
Email Settings.....	316
Chapter 3. SIGN+ API Guide.....	318
Understanding the AppViewX Sign+ API.....	318
RESTful HTTPS Requests.....	318
Requests.....	318
Request Structure.....	319
Response Structure.....	320
Description of Server Responses.....	320
URI Scheme.....	321
Types of Accounts in AppViewX.....	321
Login API with User Account.....	321
Retrieve session ID using login API.....	321
Using Session ID for further API calls.....	326
Accessing API with Service Account.....	329
Retrieve Access Token using get-service-token API.....	330
Using Access Token in the header for further API calls.....	333
Code Signing with Upload & Sign.....	337
Before you begin.....	337
Request Structure.....	337
Response Structure.....	339
Status Codes.....	340
Sample Request/Response.....	341
Related Information.....	342
Download Code Signed Files.....	342
Before you begin.....	342
Request Structure.....	342

Response Structure.....	344
Status Codes.....	344
Sample Request/Response.....	344
Generate Hash for Code Signing.....	345
Before you begin.....	345
Request Structure.....	345
Response Structure.....	347
Status Codes.....	348
Sample Request/Response.....	349
Related Information.....	350

Preface

Revision History

Revision	Description	Date
1.1	Updated version of document for Release 2023.1.0 FP2	February 2024
1.0	Initial draft of document for release 2023.1.0 FP1	November 2023

About this Guide

A comprehensive manual for executing Certificate Lifecycle Management (Enroll, Renew, Regenerate, and Revoke).

Audience

This guide is intended for all AppViewX Customers and Application Teams.

Text Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Description
boldface	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
<code>codeblock</code>	Indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

Chapter 1: SIGN+ User Guide

- [Introduction](#)
- [Getting Started](#)
- [Certificate Actions](#)
- [Certificate Inventory](#)
- [Signing Inventory](#)
- [Integration with CI/CD pipeline](#)
- [Integrating SIGN+ using Native Tools](#)

Introduction

SIGN+ is an advanced software signing solution that enhances the security and trustworthiness of digital code and applications. It utilizes industry-standard practices to verify software's authenticity and integrity, offering strong protection against tampering and malware threats. This guide delves into SIGN+'s key features, benefits, and implementation across diverse software development and distribution scenarios.

- [Code Signing](#)
- [Code Signing Certificate](#)
- [Signing Policy](#)
- [TimeStamping](#)

Code Signing

Code signing is a security practice in software development and distribution. That involves digitally signing software executables and scripts to validate their authenticity and integrity, ensuring that the code remains unaltered and trustworthy since it was signed by the software publisher.

Code signing plays a vital role in ensuring software security and trustworthiness, serving multiple essential purposes:

1. **Authentication:** Code signing allows software developers and publishers to verify their identities. When developers sign their code, they use a digital certificate issued by a trusted certificate authority (CA). This certificate is associated with the developer's identity, signifying that the code can be trusted and originates from a known source.

2. **Integrity:** Code signing guarantees that the code remains unaltered or untampered with during transmission or after signing. The digital signature serves as a checksum for the code. Any modifications to the code render the signature invalid, indicating potential tampering.
3. **Trust:** End-users and systems can trust signed code. Operating systems and security software frequently examine the digital signature of code before permitting its execution. Valid signatures from trusted sources are more likely to be executed without warnings or restrictions.
4. **Security:** Code signing offers protection against malware and malicious tampering. If malicious actors attempt to alter a signed executable, the signature becomes invalid, and the modified code is not trusted.
5. **Version Control:** Code signing can include version information, enabling users to verify the software version during installation. This helps in managing software updates and patches.
6. **Timestamping:** Code signing certificates often include timestamp data. This ensures that the signature remains valid even after the certificate expires, which is crucial for long-lived software.
7. **Protection Against Malware and Tampering:** Code signing serves as a deterrent against distributing malware and tampering with code. Attackers are less likely to modify or inject malicious code into a signed application because such tampering would invalidate the digital signature and raise suspicion among users.
8. **Reducing False Positives:** Antivirus and security software frequently rely on code signing to assess the trustworthiness of applications. Signed software is less likely to trigger alerts as potential threats or false positives, resulting in smoother and safer user experiences.
9. **Smoother Installation and Execution:** Modern operating systems and security software often require signed code for installation and execution. Applications lacking signatures may trigger warning messages or encounter additional security prompts, potentially causing user hesitancy and inconvenience.

- [Enhancing Software Security Through Code Signing](#)
- [Key Components Involved in Code Signing](#)
- [Applications of Code Signing Across Different Software Types](#)
- [Code Signing Process](#)
- [Key Details in a Code Signing Certificate](#)

Enhancing Software Security Through Code Signing

Code signing enhances software security by:

1. **Verifying authenticity:** Users can trust the software's source and code origin.
2. **Ensuring integrity:** Tamper detection alerts against unauthorized changes.

3. **Malware Prevention:** Identifies malicious code injections.
4. **Secure software updates:** Ensures users receive authentic and untampered updates.
5. **Phishing Risk Reduction:** Digital signatures verify sender authenticity.
6. **Trust in Downloads:** Users trust verified software providers.
7. **Enterprise Security Enhancement:** Only approved and secure software is installed.
8. **Compliance Assurance:** Adheres to industry standards and regulations.

Key Components Involved in Code Signing

The code signing process involves several key components to ensure code authenticity and integrity. These components collaborate to establish trust between the code signer and the code recipient.

The key components involved in code signing are:

1. **Code Signing Certificate:** A digital certificate, issued by a trusted Certificate Authority (CA), specifically for code signing.
2. **Private Key:** Part of the code signing certificate used to create the digital signature during the signing process.
3. **Public Key:** Extracted from the code signing certificate, it verifies the digital signature and ensures the code hasn't been altered or tampered since signing.
4. **Digital Signature:** Created by hashing the code and encrypting the hash using the private key. It is embedded in the code to verify authenticity and integrity.
5. **Hash Function:** A cryptographic hash function is used to generate the code's hash for signing.
6. **Certificate Revocation Information:** This contains data about the code signing certificate's revocation and expiry status.
7. **Certificate Chain:** Comprises the code signing certificate and one or more intermediate certificates, ultimately leading to a trusted root certificate. It validates that the certificate is issued by a trusted CA.

Applications of Code Signing Across Different Software Types

- **Executable Files (.exe):** These are applications and software programs.
- **Dynamic Link Libraries (.dll):** Shared libraries used by applications.
- **Installer Packages (.msi):** These are setup files for software installation.
- **Scripts:** This includes PowerShell scripts, VBScript, JavaScript, and more.
- **Java Archive Files (.jar):** Used primarily in Java applications.
- **Mobile Apps:** This covers Android APK files and iOS app bundles.
- **Drivers:** Device drivers for various hardware components.

- **Plug-ins:** Extensions for software applications.
- **Firmware:** Embedded software found in hardware devices.

Overall, code signing is a critical practice for ensuring the authenticity, integrity, and security of software, making it a trusted component of software distribution and installation processes.

Code Signing Process

The code signing process involves the following steps:

1. **Obtaining a code signing certificate:** To sign the code, you need a code signing certificate from a trusted Certificate Authority (CA). This certificate will contain a public and private key pair, respectively, used for signing and verifying purposes.
2. **Hash Generation:** The next step in the code signing process is to generate a hash value for the software code to be signed. A hash function (such as SHA-256) is used to create a unique fixed-length string representing the code's content, known as the digest.
3. **Signing process:** The private key from the code signing certificate encrypts the generated hash, creating a unique digital signature that ensures the integrity and authenticity of the software.
4. **Embedding Signature:** The digital signature is subsequently embedded into the code or software. The method of embedding may vary depending on the platform and file format, ensuring it can be successfully verified.
5. **Verification:** When a user or system receives the signed code, the digital signature is extracted from the code. The digital signature is decrypted using the public key corresponding to the private key used to sign the code. This confirms that the signature matches the code's content and that the code has not been altered since signing, thus remaining untampered.
6. **Additional Verification:** Some additional verification is also carried out, such as the certificate chain validation for checking if the certificate comes from a trusted CA and the revocation check to ensure the signing certificate has not been revoked or expired. These are given as warnings and provide more trust and transparency.

Key Details in a Code Signing Certificate

The information included in a code signing certificate typically consists of the following:

1. **Subject Name:** This includes the name of the entity or individual specified on the certificate. It may be an individual's name or the name of a company or organization.
2. **Subject Alternative Names (SANs):** In some cases, the certificate may include multiple subject names (SANs), allowing the certificate to be used for signing code on different domains or platforms.

3. **Serial Number:** The issuing CA assigns a unique identifier to the certificate.
4. **Public Key:** The code signing certificate contains a public key that corresponds to the private key used for signing the code. The private key remains with the signer and is used to generate the digital signature.
5. **Issuer:** Information about the certificate authority that issued the code-signing certificate. This helps verify the certificate's authenticity.
6. **Validity Period:** The certificate's start and end dates define the period during which the certificate is considered valid for code signing.
7. **Thumbprint/Fingerprint:** A hash value calculated from the certificate's content, serving as a unique identifier for the certificate.
8. **Key Usage:** Indicates the purpose for which the public key can be used. For code-signing certificates, this would typically include the "Digital Signature" key usage.
9. **Extended Key Usage:** A list of specific purposes for which the certificate can be used. For code-signing certificates, this would include "Code Signing".
10. **Certificate Revocation Information:** Code-signing certificates are subject to revocation if they are compromised or invalidated. The certificate may contain information about how to check for revocation, such as Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) or Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) responders.
11. **Signature Algorithm:** The algorithm used to sign the certificate itself, ensuring its integrity and authenticity.

Code Signing Certificate

A trusted certificate authority (CA) issues a code signing certificate, also referred to as a software signing certificate or digital code signing certificate. Software developers and publishers use this certificate to sign their software code, scripts, and executables. These certificates play a crucial role in ensuring the authenticity and integrity of software distributed to end-users.

- [Need for a Code Signing Certificate](#)

Need for a Code Signing Certificate

In code signing, digital certificates are central and crucial for establishing trust in the authenticity and integrity of the signed code. Digital certificates serve several key roles, including:

1. Verification of Code Signer Identity:

- The digital certificate holds information regarding the identity of the code signer, including the organization's or individual's name, email address, and other relevant details.
- Verifying the code signer's identity is vital for users to determine the legitimacy and trustworthiness of the code's source.

2. Creation of Digital Signature:

- The code signer utilizes their private key, which is part of the code signing certificate, to generate a digital signature for the code.
- The signature is unique to the code and the signer, that helps establish the authenticity of the code.

3. Verification of Code Integrity:

- Users or systems receiving the signed code use the public key from the code signing certificate to decrypt the digital signature.
- This process generates the original hash value of the code, which is compared with a newly calculated hash of the received code.
- If the two hash values match, that indicates that the code has not been altered or tampered with since signing, ensuring the code's integrity.

4. Certificate Chain Verification:

- A trusted Certificate Authority issues the digital certificate, and the certificate chain verifies its authenticity.
- This step establishes trust in the code signer's identity, as the CA is responsible for validating the identity before issuing the certificate.

5. Revocation Checking:

- Digital certificates can be revoked if they are compromised, expired, or no longer considered trustworthy.
- Revocation checking helps ensure that the code signing certificate is still valid and trustworthy at the time of code execution.

6. Identity Verification:

- To acquire a code signing certificate, a software developer or publisher must undergo a thorough identity verification process conducted by the certificate authority (CA).
- This process verifies the identity and legitimacy of the developer. Once verified, the CA issues a digital certificate associated with the developer's name or organization.

7. Digital Signature:

- With a code signing certificate in hand, developers can digitally sign their software code and files. This involves applying a unique cryptographic signature to the code, which serves as a tamper-evident seal.
- Any modification to the code after signing will invalidate the signature.

8. Authenticity:

- When end-users or systems encounter signed software, they can verify the digital signature using the public key associated with the code signing certificate.
- This verification process confirms that the software has not been altered since it was signed and that it indeed comes from the verified developer or publisher. It helps users trust the software's authenticity.

9. **User Trust:**

- Code signing certificates are essential for establishing trust between software developers and end-users.
- When users download and run signed software, they are less likely to encounter security warnings or alerts, as the signature signifies that the software is from a reputable source.

10. **Protection Against Malware:**

- Code signing is a preventive measure against malware and malicious tampering. Signed software is less likely to be modified by attackers, as any changes would break the signature.
- This makes it more challenging for malicious actors to distribute compromised software.

11. **Version Control:**

- Code signing certificates can include version information, allowing users to verify the specific version of the software they are installing. This is particularly important for software updates and patches.

In summary, the need for a code signing certificate arises from the critical role it plays in establishing trust, verifying the authenticity of software, and ensuring its integrity. By digitally signing their code, developers provide users with confidence that the software has not been tampered with and that it originates from a legitimate source. This is especially important in a digital landscape where security and trust are paramount.

Signing Policy

A signing policy, in the context of code signing and security practices, refers to a set of rules, guidelines, and procedures that govern how digital signatures are applied to software, scripts, or other digital assets.

Signing policies are typically defined and implemented within organizations to ensure the secure and consistent application of digital signatures. These policies are a fundamental part of a broader security strategy and are important for various reasons:

- **Security Assurance:** Signing policies help ensure the security of software and digital assets by specifying who can sign code, what can be signed, and under what circumstances. They establish a framework for mitigating risks associated with unauthorized or malicious code modifications.
- **Authentication:** Signing policies often dictate the use of code signing certificates issued by trusted certificate authorities (CAs). These certificates verify the identity of the signer, adding a layer of authentication to the signed code. This helps establish trust in the source of the software.
- **Integrity:** Policies define the conditions under which code should be signed. By adhering to these policies, organizations maintain the integrity of their code base, as any unauthorized changes or tampering will result in the invalidation of the digital signature.
- **Non-Repudiation:** Code signing with adherence to policies provides non-repudiation, meaning that the signer cannot deny their involvement in the signing process. This is crucial for accountability and legal purposes.
- **Compliance:** Many industries and regulatory bodies require organizations to adhere to specific code signing practices. Signing policies help ensure compliance with these regulations, which is especially important in sectors like healthcare, finance, and government.
- **Version Control:** Policies can specify how versioning should be managed for signed code. This helps users verify the authenticity and integrity of software updates and patches.

Key Aspects Covered by Signing Policies

A signing policy plays a crucial role in an organization's cybersecurity strategy by fostering trust, preserving code integrity, and mitigating the risk of malware and security breaches. It provides explicit guidelines for secure code signing practices, making it an essential component of secure software development and distribution. Key aspects of security addressed by signing policies include:

- **Authorized Signers:** Signing policies are used to determine authorized personnel, identifying individuals within the organization authorized to sign code or digital assets, which may include specific developers or security team members
- **Signing Environment:** Secure code signing environments identify and include environments and systems that are secure and trusted.
- **Certificate Usage:** Managing code signing certificates addresses the selection and management of the certificates, often emphasizing the use of certificates issued by recognized Certificate Authorities (CAs).
- **Review and Approval:** Code review and approval procedures ensure compliance with security and quality standards before signing.
- **Time-stamping:** Signing policies ensure valid signatures over time, implementing timestamping requirements to maintain the validity of signatures, even after the certificate's expiration.
- **Revocation:** Signing policies outline procedures for revoking signatures in cases of compromised certificates or unauthorized code changes.

TimeStamping

TimeStamping is a cryptographic technique used to securely record the exact date and time when a digital document or code was signed. A trusted timestamp authority (TSA), typically operated by a certificate authority (CA) or a third-party timestamping service, generates this timestamp. It ensures long-term validity of digital signatures by providing an immutable reference point, preventing disputes about the timing of the signature's creation.

- [Timestamping in Code Signing](#)

Timestamping in Code Signing

Timestamping in code signing involves adding a timestamp to the digital signature of a software application or code package. The timestamp is cryptographically incorporated into the digital signature itself, thus ensuring the long-term validity and trustworthiness of the code signature, even after the signing certificate has expired.

When code is signed, a digital signature is generated using the code signer's private key. This signature is based on the code's content and includes metadata about the signer and the signing certificate. However, digital certificates have a finite validity period, and they can be revoked if compromised or no longer considered trustworthy. Once a certificate expires or is revoked, the signature becomes invalid.

Benefits of timestamping:

- **Long-Term Validity:** By including a timestamp in the code signature, the signature remains valid even after the code signer's certificate has expired or been revoked. The timestamp establishes the signing time while the certificate is still valid.
- **Non-Repudiation:** The timestamp serves as proof that the code was signed at a specific time by a specific entity. This helps prevent the signer from denying their involvement in the signing process, providing non-repudiation of the signature.
- **Trust Across Time:** End-users can trust the signature, knowing that it was valid at the time of signing, even if the signing certificate is no longer valid. This is especially important for the long-term archival of code or when verifying the authenticity of older, signed code.
- **Protection Against Time-Based Attacks:** Including a timestamp helps protect against potential attacks aimed at exploiting vulnerabilities in code signatures that depend solely on certificate validity periods.

- **Certificate Expiration:** Digital certificates used for code signing have a limited lifespan, typically ranging from one to three years. When a certificate expires, any code signed with that certificate may be considered invalid, leading to potential security issues and software functionality problems.
- **Trustworthiness:** Timestamps are issued by trusted timestamp authorities, adding an additional layer of trust to the code signature.
- **Security Updates:** Users can be confident that software updates or patches signed with an expired certificate are still valid if they have a valid timestamp.

Timestamping Process

The timestamping process for code signing includes the following steps:

1. The code signer signs the code using their code signing certificate.
2. The signer sends the code signature to a TSA for timestamping.
3. The TSA generates a timestamp token, which includes the UTC time and date.
4. The TSA's certificate signs the timestamp token.
5. The timestamp token is added to the code's digital signature.
6. The signed code, including the timestamp token, is distributed to users.

Timestamping Authorities Supported by AppViewX for Code Signing

- GlobalSign
- Symantec (now part of DigiCert)
- Entrust
- SwissSign
- Comodo CA (now Sectigo)
- DigiCert
- IdenTrust
- QuoVadis Global
- GlobalSign Advanced.

If you need to use a timestamping authority other than those listed above, you should provide the specific URL or information related to that timestamping authority. This ensures that your code signing process is properly configured to use the required timestamping service. Be sure to consult with your organization's code signing policies and requirements when selecting a timestamping authority or specifying a custom URL.

Getting Started

- [Overview](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Accessing SIGN+](#)
- [Downloading the CSP/PKCS#11 Package](#)

Overview

About AppViewX

AppViewX is advanced cybersecurity and network management, automation, and orchestration platform for Enterprise IT. AppViewX Lifecycle Management Solution for Certificates on ADC or Load Balancers, Servers, Firewall, Cloud, Web Application Firewall (WAF), and enterprise mobility solution aims to avoid network outages due to unplanned certificate expiration and improve organization security posture. This remote monitoring and management platform helps network operations move faster, enforce compliance, eliminate errors, and reduce costs in the organization.

SIGN+ Overview

AppViewX's SIGN+ provides an end-to-end lifecycle management of x.509 digital certificates across complex networks to secure your business. With SIGN+, security teams can manage the certificate lifecycle from an intuitive single-pane management interface. It enables the Certificate Lifecycle Management and Automation solution which helps enterprise IT manage and automate the entire lifecycle of their internal and external PKI. The key stages of the certificate lifecycle can be broken into the following stages:

Certificate Discovery and Inventory Management - This allows users to discover certificates across the network and manage inventory of all certificates in one place.

Visibility and Monitoring - This enables the user to monitor certificate expiry and usage. The monitored data is represented as a detailed report on the web portal along with options to trigger email alerts. Allows users to gain insights into certificates; monitor and take remedial action.

Certificate Enrollment - This allows users to request certificates from a certificate authority (CA) that confirms their identity and generates a certificate.

Certificate Renewal - This allows users to either manually or automatically renew a certificate before the expiry date by retaining the old private key.

Certificate Regeneration - This allows users to enroll new certificates with similar parameters to an old certificate. When a user generates a new private key, the user can modify the parameters if required.

Certificate Reissuance - This allows users to enroll new certificates with similar parameters to an old certificate. But the newly issued certificate comes with the same validity as the older certificate and can modify the parameters.

Certificate Revocation - This allows users to revoke a certificate in the event of certificate loss, compromise, or any other reason when the certificate is no more necessary for business.

Certificate Audit - Track and audit the usage, creation, expiration, and revocation of certificates. Track user interaction with the platform.

What is Certificate Lifecycle Management (CLM)?

There is a growing need for organizations to allow and control only specific individuals, devices, and machines to gain access to the network. The need for digital certificates to authenticate, identify, and control who can access and operate on an organization's network. Managing digital certificates across complex networks to ensure protection and prevent failures is a must for all businesses. CLM ensures continuous monitoring of digital certificates, with the ability to audit and keep track of expirations and renewals to avoid any service disruption. The digital certificate is a mechanism by which machines and individuals are identified and authenticated.

What is x.509 Digital Certificate?

The digital certificate is a mechanism by which machines and individuals are identified and authenticated. Digital certificates (x.509 certificates) are essential to establish trust and authenticate the identity of machines, people, and so on.

It helps to verify the identity between users in operation, servers, and other entities in a network. Also, identifies servers from whom the encrypted data is received, the signer of information, and helps to establish authenticity and integrity. The x.509 digital certificate protects information belonging to enterprises and their customers.

A digital certificate contains:

- Name of the certificate holder.
- Serial Number that is used to uniquely identify the service, individual, or entity identified by the certificate.
- Expiry date.

- Copy of the certificate holder's public key (used for decrypting messages and digital signatures).
- Digital Signature of the certificate-issuing authority.

Certificate Authority

A Certificate Authority (CA) is also known as a certification authority or certificate issuer and is an establishment that validates the identities of certificate requestors and associates them to a cryptographic key through the issuance of electronic documents known as digital certificates.


Prerequisites

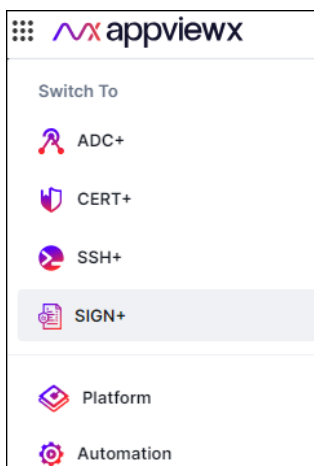
Supported Web Browsers

Web Browser	Version
Firefox	118.0.1 (64-bit) or later
Google Chrome	117.0.5938.134 (Official Build) (64-bit) or later

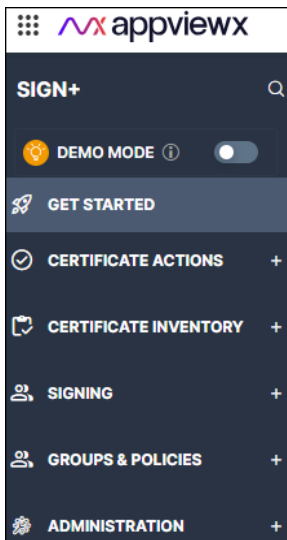
Accessing SIGN+

The following steps explain how to access **SIGN+**:

1. Log into AppViewX with valid credentials. (The product URL will be shared by AppViewX in the onboarding emails).
2. From the upper left corner of the screen, click  (**Menu**).
3. On the displayed menu click **SIGN+**.



The SIGN+ home page is displayed. The menu is replaced with the menu for **SIGN+**.





Downloading the CSP/PKCS#11 Package

1. Go to **Menu** > **SIGN+** > **Getting Started** (left menu).
The Getting Started page is displayed.
2. In the **Downloads** widget (AppViewX Native Library) > , click **Download your CSP / PKCS#11 package**.
The **Pages > Download Package** page is displayed.
3. In the **General Details** section select the values as follows:



General Section - Field Description table

Fields	Description
*OS Type	Select the operating system of your choice from - Windows, Linux, or Mac .
*Authentication Type	Select the type of authentication from <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User-Based: User-based authentication verifies identity through user name credential. • OAuth-Based: Authentication through OAuth-based authorization through service account.

Fields	Description
* User Name	<div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed if Authentication Type is selected as User-Based. </div> <p>Select the username from the dropdown for which the SIGN+ package installer is required.</p>
* Service Account	<div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed if Authentication Type is selected as OAuth-Based. </div> <p>Select the service account from the dropdown for which the SIGN+ package installer is required.</p> <p>For creating a service account in appviewx, click here.</p>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

4. In the **Signing Configuration Details** section select the values as follows:

Signing Configuration Details - Field Description table

Fields	Description
* Select Signing Policy	<p>Select the Signing policy name which is specified to a user group.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: The default policy name is set as the first policy in the dropdown. </div>
* Select Signing Key	<p>Select the sign key using which the uploaded file can be signed.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: The default signing key is set as the signing key of first policy in the dropdown. </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Click **Add**.

The selected Policy and Signing Key are displayed in a table. The contents of the table are described below.

Column description of Signing Configuration Details

Column	Description
Policy Name	The policy selected in the field Select Signing Policy .
Key Name	The policy selected in the field Select Signing Key .
Action	Contains a delete icon to remove the value from the table.



Note: Once the Policy is added, it cannot be added a second time.

6. To download the package files, click the **Download** button.

The package files are saved at the file location on your system. Different types of files are generated based on the selected **OS Type**. The files and their hierarchy are as follows:

- **Windows**

- a. **Sign+ Installer file**
- b. **<Policy_Name>** folder - contains the root, intermediate, and code-signing certificates.
- c. **Libraries** - contains the folders **CSP**, **Dependencies**, and **PKCS11** along with **avx_sign_config.json**.

- **Linux**

- a. **Sign+ Installer file**
- b. **<Policy_Name>** folder - contains the root, intermediate, and code-signing certificates.
- c. **Libraries** - contains the folder **PKCS11** along with **avx_sign_config.json**.

- **Mac**

- a. **Sign+ Installer file**
- b. **<Policy_Name>** folder - contains the root, intermediate, and code-signing certificates.
- c. **Libraries** - contains the folder **PKCS11** along with **avx_sign_config.json**.

Certificate Actions

For launching any new application in an enterprise, an SSL certificate is required to secure the communication. The certificate lifecycle has different phases starting with enrolling. AppViewX SIGN+ enables you to manage every action that is involved in the certificate lifecycle.

In the Certificate Action section, the following actions can be performed:

- Enroll Certificate
- Revoke Certificate
- Revocation Check - OCSP
- Generate CSR
- [Certificate Enrollment](#)
- [Certificate Revocation](#)
- [Revocation Check for Code Signing Certificate](#)
- [Generating CSR for Code Signing Certificate](#)

Certificate Enrollment

Code signing certificate enrollment is the process of obtaining a digital certificate (from the Certificate Authority (CA)) that is specifically designed for signing code, scripts, executables, and software applications. This certificate is essential for software developers and organizations to verify the authenticity and integrity of their software. It is a primary step in certificate lifecycle management (CLM). In the enrollment process, a user must submit the details of the entity (server or individual) to the certifying authority. The authority validates the correctness of the information and ownership before issuing a digital certificate.

- [Code Signing Certificate Enrollment](#)

Code Signing Certificate Enrollment

Code Signing certificate enrollment refers to the process of creating a digital ID for a code or document. It starts with the generation of a key pair (private and public key) and CSR and then submitting the CSR to the desired CA to procure a certificate. SIGN+ supports the generation of key pairs on the device, HSM, and AppViewX. You can also upload the CSR when enrolling for a digital certificate.



Note: These certificates cannot be hosted on servers.

Prerequisites

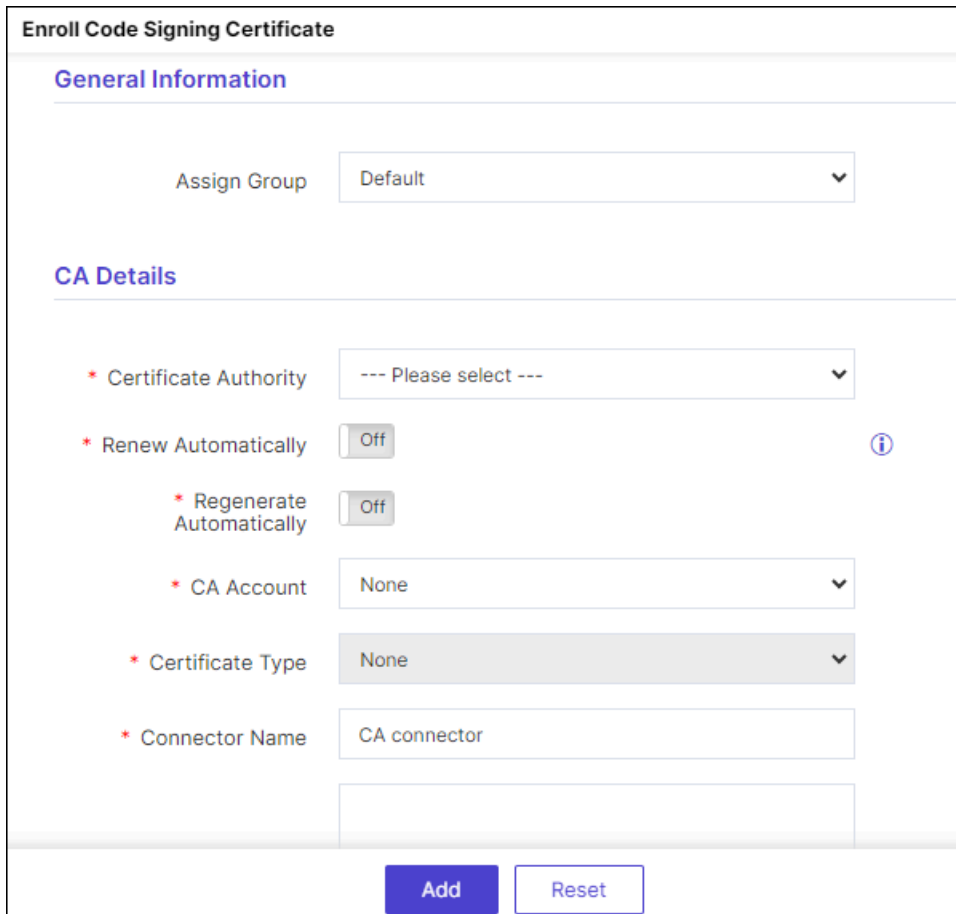
- Users should have read and write access to the account.
- The user should have configured the CA account in AppViewX.
- Policy creation and certificate profile are created according to the customer's use case.
- Purpose and usage are mapped according to the extended key usage and validation policy.

Enrollment

The following steps explain how to enroll a code signing certificate:

1. Go to  (Menu) > SIGN+.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE ACTIONS**, select **Enroll Certificate > Code Signing Certificate**.

The **Enroll Code Signing Certificate** page is displayed.



Enroll Code Signing Certificate

General Information

Assign Group: Default

CA Details

* Certificate Authority: --- Please select ---

* Renew Automatically: Off

* Regenerate Automatically: Off

* CA Account: None




* Certificate Type: None




* Connector Name: CA connector



Add Reset





3. In the **General Information** section, from the dropdown list, select the required **Assign Group**.
4. Enter the following fields in the **CA Details** section:



Field descriptions for the CA Details section

Fields	Description
*Certificate Authority	<p>Select the desired certificate authority from the dropdown lists. Based on the selected CA, other CA details are configured. The possible CAs are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Digicert MPKI • GlobalSign SSL • GlobalSign MSSL • Microsoft Enterprise • Microsoft Standalone • Nexus • OpenTrust • Any Other Programmable CA configured by the user
*Renew Automatically	<p>Select the toggle button to On or Off.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the toggle is enabled, the Start Renewing option will be enabled. • Enter the number of days to renew the certificate automatically. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Changing the group inherited renew period overwrites the renewal period for this certificate. </div>
*CA Account	To which account the enrollment request to be submitted.
Certificate Type	Select the desired certificate type from the dropdown list.
*Division	<p>Select the division to which the certificate must be enrolled.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This field will be shown only for Digicert CA. </div>
Certificate Profile	<p>Select the Profile to which the Certificate must enroll.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This field is applicable only for AppViewX CA and Google CA. </div>

Fields	Description				
*Issuer Location	<p>Select the location of the issuer CA from the dropdown list.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This is applicable only for Google CA. </div>				
*Issuer Name	<p>Select the name of the issuer CA from the dropdown list.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This is applicable only for Google CA. </div>				
*Connector Name	<p>Enter the friendly name for Certificate Authority connector in this field which will be displayed in the holistic view on saving this form.</p>				
Description	<p>Enter the description in this field.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: You can enter a maximum of 2000 words in the field. </div>				
*CSR Generation	<p>Select the CSR generation option as required.</p> <p>Options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AppViewX CSR Generation. • UploadCSR - Uploaded CSR will be taken as a source to populate CSR parameters and submit to CA. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click the Browse button, and then the file. • Click the Upload button to upload the selected file. • On uploading CSR successfully, CSR parameters are automatically filled in the CSR section. • HSM - Private key and CSR will be created in the selected HSM device based on CSR parameters given. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Fields</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>*Device Type</td> <td> <p>Select the type of device as required. The possible options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HSM Devices • ADC Devices </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Fields	Description	*Device Type	<p>Select the type of device as required. The possible options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HSM Devices • ADC Devices
Fields	Description				
*Device Type	<p>Select the type of device as required. The possible options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HSM Devices • ADC Devices 				

Fields	Description	
	Fields	Description
*Vendors	<p>Select the desired vendors from the dropdown list.</p> <p>The possible vendors when device selected as HSM</p> <p>Devices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fortanix • PKCS11 <p>The possible vendors when device selected as ADC</p> <p>Devices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Safenet • Thales • Fortanix 	
*Devices	<p>Select the desired device from the dropdown list.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • By default, the None Selected option is enabled. • When Device Type = ADC - User chooses from the list based on the vendors field selection. </div>	
*Key Handler Name	<p>Enter the desired handler name in the field.</p>	
*Key Reference Name	<p>Enter the Key Reference Name.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: This field appears only when Device Type = ADC Devices.</p> </div>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • End Point - Private key and CSR will be created in the selected End Point device based on CSR parameters given. 		

Fields	Description	
	Fields	Description
Category	<p>Select the desired category from the dropdown list.</p> <p>The possible options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ADC • Server • Firewall 	
Vendor	<p>Select the desired vendor from the dropdown list. The possible options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AVI • Citrix • F5 • Ngnix Plus • HAProxy <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Vendor list is populated based on the category, select the desired vendor from the dropdown list. </div>	
*Devices	<p>Select the desired device from the dropdown list.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: By default, the None option is selected. </div>	
Tenant	<p>Enter the tenant ID in this field.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This field appears when you select category as ADC. </div>	
*CSR file name	<p>Enter the name of the CSR file in this field.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This field appears when you select category as Server. </div>	

Fields	Description	
	Fields	Description
	*Partition	Enter the partition in this field. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: This field appears when you select category as Firewall. </div>
	*Key File Name	Enter the name of the key file in this field.
	<div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: For all CA types except Amazon, you have the option to generate the CSR. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AppViewX - Private key and CSR will be created in AppViewX based on CSR parameters given. </div>	
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>		

While enrolling certificates with policies using Google CA, the following points must be considered:

• **Certificate Enrollment - Strict Policy**

- The Common Name will not be pre-filled from the policy.
- The following validation appears based on strict policy guidelines.
 - If the Common Name's domain name is not present in the **Allowed Domain Name** list, an error validation will be shown upon saving the policy details.

• **Certificate Enrollment - Suggestive Policy**

- The Common Name will not be pre-filled from the policy
- The following validation will be seen based on strict policy guidelines.
 - If the Common Name's domain name is not present in the **Allowed Domain Name** list, the non-compliant policy will be created.
 - If the Common Name's domain name is present in the **Blocked Domain Name** list, an error validation will be shown upon saving the policy details.


5. Only for the EJBCA CA, enter the **Vendor Specific Details**.

Field descriptions for the Vendor Specific Details section.


Fields	Description
End entity user name	Enter the name of the end entity.

Fields	Description
* End Entity Profile Name	Select the profile name from the dropdown list .
* User Common Name	Select the common name from the dropdown list.
* Certificate Profile Name	Select the certificate profile name from the dropdown list.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Enter the following fields in the **CSR Parameters**.


Fields	Description
* Common Name	<p>The common name is one of the key values of Certificate Signing Request (CSR) to be present in the certificate. For example, <appviewx>.</p> <p>No special characters allowed except en dash (_) and hyphen (-).</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can see the count of subject alternative names (SAN) available for a certificate in the CSR parameter section, inventory grid, and CA connector page.</p> <p>Select the subject alternative subject name from the dropdown list.</p> <p>The possible options are,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select all • DNS • IP Address. <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Multiple values must be separated by a comma. • The cumulative count SANs appears in the certificate property pop-up window from the holistic view. </div>
* Organization	<p>The organization name is one of the CSR parameters to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.</p>

Fields	Description
Organization Unit	Organization Unit name is one of the CSR parameters to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.
Locality	The locality name is one of the CSR parameters to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.
State	The state name is one of the CSR parameters to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.
*Country	Country name is one of the CSR parameters to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on configuration. It must be a 2-letter country code (for example, US, and so on).
Email Address	The email contact details of the person responsible for maintaining the certificate. Enter the valid e-mail address.
*Validity	Enter the number in this field and select the entered validity list to be in Days, Months, and Years from the dropdown list.
Challenge Password	Challenge password is one of the CSR parameters to be present in the certificate. Password must contain at least one alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), one number, and one special character.
Confirm Password	Re-enter the same password to confirm that is entered in the Challenge Password field.
*Hash Function	The Hash function with which the CSR has to be signed. Any information specific to any CA or vendor has to be covered in the Note section. This field is auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.

Fields	Description
	 Note: For Certificate Authority = HydrantID , irrespective of the hash function selected, by default, the CA returns a certificate with SHA256. Therefore, admins must restrict users from creating a certificate with a hash function other than SHA256. To accomplish this, create policy with a single hash value (SHA256).
*Key Type	The key type is used while creating a private and public key pair. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy. The supported key types are RSA , ECC and DSA .
*Bit Length	The bit length is used while creating a private and public key pair. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. In the **Attachments** section, upload any additional documents that are relevant to the enrollment of the certificate (for example, approval emails).

Field descriptions for the Attachments section

Fields	Description
Name	Enter the alternate name for the document to be uploaded.
Comments	Enter the comments in this field.  Note: You can enter a maximum of 2000 words in the field.
Upload File	Click the Upload button to select the file.

8. Other than the CSR fields, you can add organization-specific values along with CSR. These values will not be part of the certificate but will be available in the AppViewX inventory. For example, cost center. Inventory can be filtered based on these attributes as well. In the Certificate Attributes can be added under Administration > certificate attributes, it will be reflected on the enrollment page:

9. Enter the relevant details in the **Generic Fields**. These are default fields for maintaining the IP address and device information, if required.

Field descriptions for the Generic Fields

Fields	Description
Device Name	Enter the name of the device.
Application IP Address	Enter the IP address of the application.

10. In the **Vendor-Specific Details** section, enter the CA-specific details. Some of the CAs will expect additional details other than CSR parameters for their operational purposes.
- By default, the **Certificate ID** is auto-populated based on the value entered in the **Common Name** field (in the **CSR Parameters** section).
 - The **Certificate ID** can be modified by the user.
 - If the user edits the **Certificate ID**, any change to the **Common Name** will not reflect in the **Certificate ID**.
 - If the user deletes the **Certificate ID**, the value of the **Certificate ID** field is set to the **Common Name** suffixed with the timestamp.
11. Click **Add**.

Once the details are added, you will be redirected to a page where the CSR and CA details are added as a connector. This page is called the holistic view and from here, any action on the certificate can be performed including provisioning the certificate to a server.

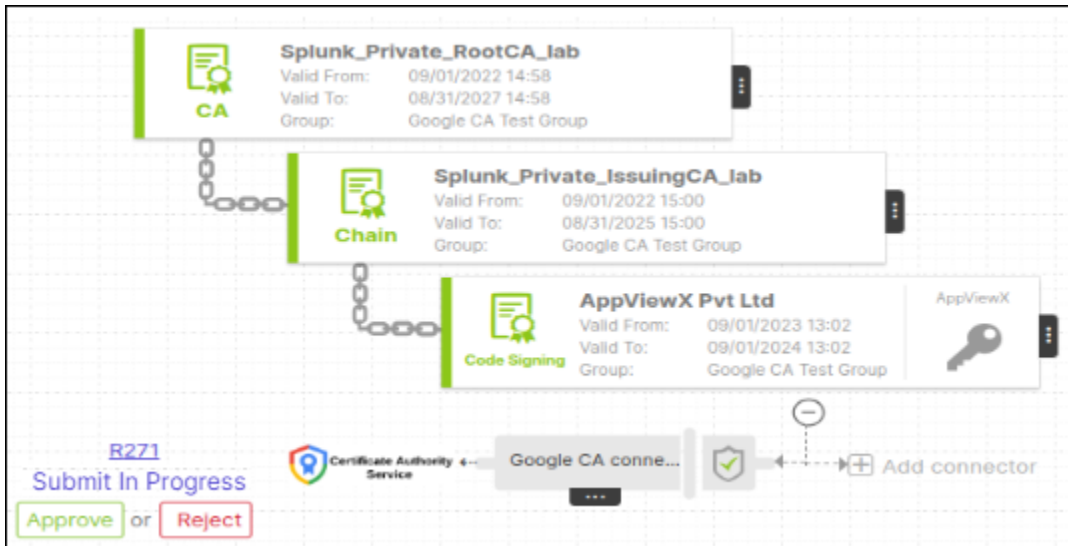
12. On the holistic view, click the **Submit** button to trigger the request.

The submit action is triggered and the **Submit** dialog box is displayed.

13. Enter your comments in the text field and click **Yes**.

If the approval required option is enabled in the CA policy, the request is moved to the **Approve** and **Implementation** stages.

14. Click **Approve** to proceed.



The **Approve** dialog box is displayed.

15. Enter your comments in the text field.



Note: If the workflow request has to be approved automatically in the future, click the **Schedule later** button .

16. Click **Yes**.

Once the approval process is completed, the **Implement** option is displayed in the holistic view.

17. On the certificate holistic view, click **Implement** to proceed.

18. In the **Implement** dialog box, enter your comments.

If the workflow request has to be implemented automatically in the future, click **Schedule later**. You can then select the **Implementation Time** from the calendar field.

19. Click **Yes**.

CSR Submission to CA is in Progress.

20. Once the CSR submission is successful, the request state will be changed to **Submit** certificate - retrieval in progress state.

If the enrollment request is compliant with conditions defined and auto-approval enabled in the targeted CA, the certificate will be fetched in a few seconds.

If auto-approval disabled in the targeted CA, you will have to be logged into the CA and approve the request.

Once the certificate is issued successfully, the certificate will be retrieved into AppViewX.



What to do next:

- [Configure the signing policy](#) with relevant details, ensuring mapping to the enrolled certificate (also identified as the signing key on the signing policy page).
- The file types selected during policy creation are the only ones permitted for upload. Supported file types include: PS1, EXE, CAT, MSI, JS, JAR, APK, VBS, CAB, WSF, DLL, APPX, and MSIX.

Certificate Revocation

Revocation is the process of making a certificate invalid. For example, you might need to revoke a certificate if the certificate is no longer required or the certificate's private key is compromised. Make sure that you have permission to revoke a certificate and submit a request to the certificate authority. As soon

as the certificate is revoked, it is not considered to be a trusted certificate. Revoked certificates are listed in the Certificate Revocation List (CRL) maintained by each certificate authority.

- [Revoking Code Signing Certificate](#)

Revoking Code Signing Certificate

The following steps explain how to revoke Code Signing Certificate,

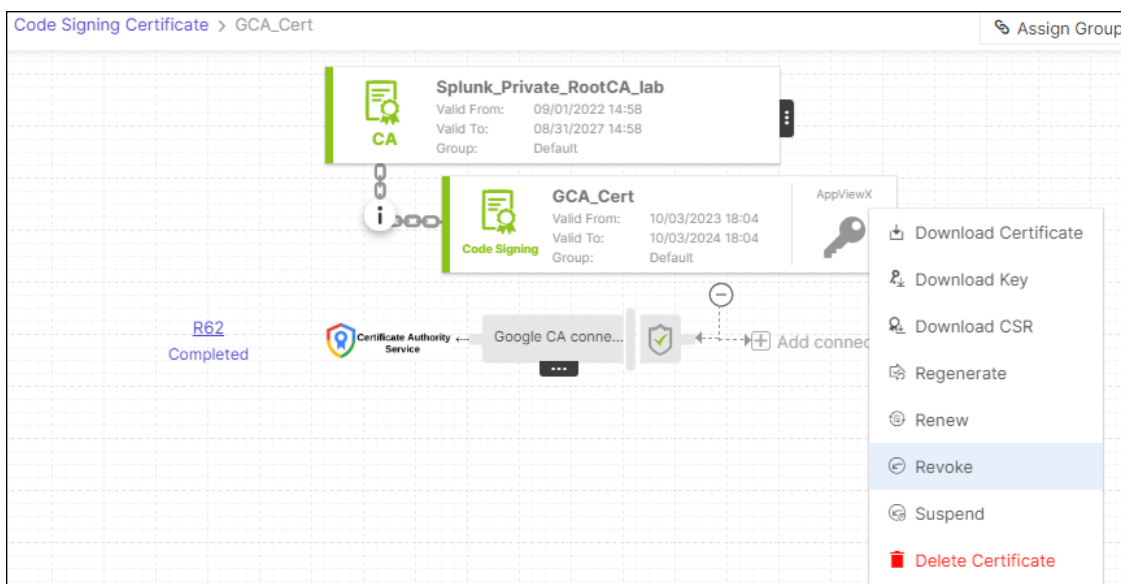
1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+**.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE ACTIONS**, select **Revoke Certificate > Code Signing Certificate**.

The **Code Signing Certificate** page is displayed.

3. To revoke a **Code Signing Certificate**, select the certificate name under **Common Name**.

The holistic view of the selected certificate is displayed.

4. Hover over the three-dot menu for the certificate, and then click **Revoke**.



5. The **Certificate Revoke** dialog box is displayed.
6. In the **Certificate Revoke** dialog box, select the reason for revoking the certificate from the dropdown.
7. You can also enter comments in the Comments text field (optional), and then click **Yes**.

Certificate Revoke

* Reason: ---Please Select ---

Comments: ---Please Select ---

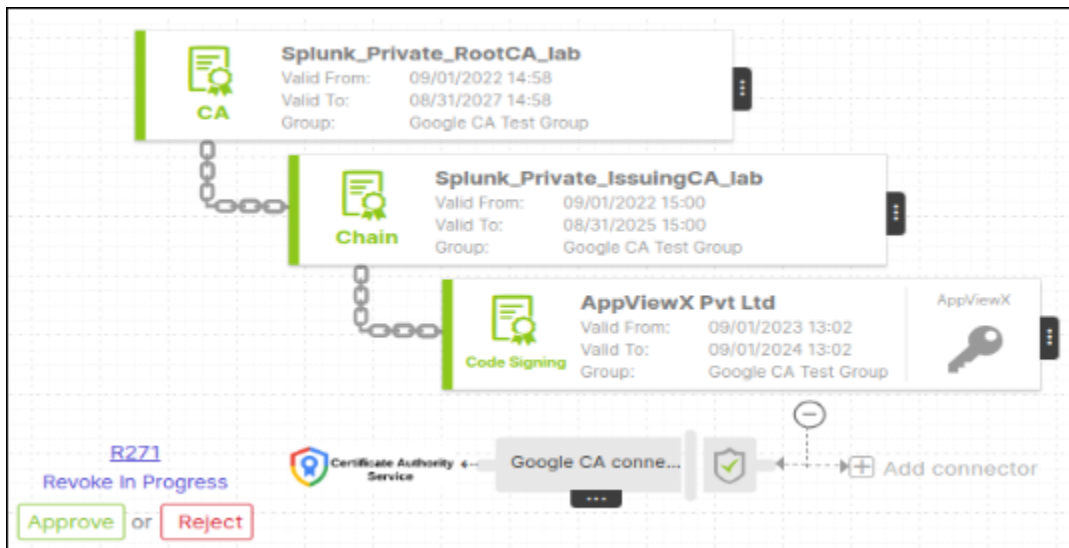
- Key compromise
- Affiliation Changed
- Unspecified
- CA compromise
- Attribute authority compromise
- Superseded
- Cessation of operation
- Privilege withdrawn

Yes No

8. The revoke process is initiated for the selected certificate.

If the **Approval Required** checkbox is enabled, the request will progress through the **Approve** and **Implementation** stages.

9. To proceed, click **Approve** on the certificate's holistic view.



10. In the **Approve** dialog box, enter your comments (optional).

Approve

Implement: Now Schedule later

Comments: [Text Area]

Yes No

If you want to schedule automatic approval for the workflow request in the future, click **Schedule later**. You can then choose the Implementation Time from the calendar field.

11. Click **Yes**.
12. On the certificate holistic view, click **Implement** to proceed.
13. In the **Implement** dialog box, enter your comments.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Implement" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Inside the dialog, there are two buttons: "Now" (light blue) and "Schedule later" (dark blue). Below these buttons is a field labeled "Implementation Time" with a red asterisk, a text input box, and a calendar icon. Underneath is a larger text area labeled "Comments". At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "Yes" (dark blue) and "No" (light blue).

If you want the workflow request to be automatically approved in the future, click **Schedule later**. You can then select the **Implementation Time** from the calendar field.

14. Click **Yes**.
15. After the certificate is revoked, the status updates to **Completed**.

Revocation Check for Code Signing Certificate

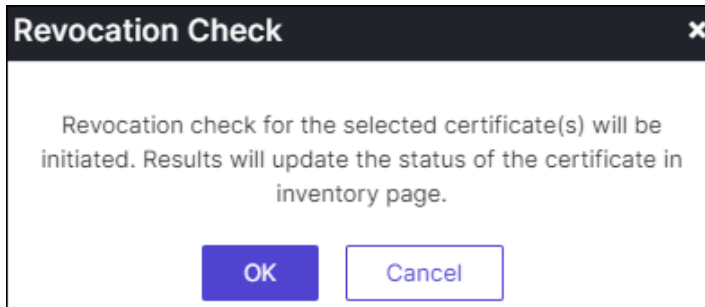
The following steps explain how to perform revocation check for a code signing certificate:

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+**.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE ACTIONS**, select **Revocation Check - OCSP** > **Code Signing Certificate**.

The **Code Signing Certificate** page is displayed.

3. To Revocation Check a **Code Signing Certificate**, select the certificate for which you want to perform a **Revocation Check** under **Common Name**.
4. Click Actions menu and choose **Revocation Check** from the dropdown.


In the **Revocation Check** dialog box is displayed.



5. Click **OK** to proceed revocation check.
6. Revocation check results will be updated on the inventory page.



Generating CSR for Code Signing Certificate

The following steps explain how to generate a CSR for a code signing certificate:

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+**.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE ACTIONS**, select **Generate CSR > Code Signing Certificate**.
The **Generate CSR : Code Signing** page is displayed.
3. In the **Group Details** section, choose the group of certificates you wish to assign the CSR to from the **Assign Group** dropdown.
4. Enter/select the **CSR details**.

Field descriptions for the CSR details section

Fields	Description
*CSR Selection	Select the key generation of CSR as required. The possible selections are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AppViewX • HSM.
*Device Type	Select the type of device as required: Options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HSM Devices • ADC Devices
*Device	Select the device from the dropdown list.
*Key Handler Name	Enter the name of the key handler.



Fields	Description
*Key Reference Name	Enter the name of the key reference.
*Common Name	<p>Name that is to be present in the certificate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  Note: No special characters allowed except en dash (_) and hyphen (-). </div>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the alternative subject name. For example, DNS or IP address.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Multiple values must be separated by a comma. The cumulative count SANs appears in the certificate property window from the holistic view. </div>
*Organization	The Organization name that to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.
Organization Unit	The Organization Unit name that to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.
Locality	The Locality name that to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.
State	The State name that to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.


Fields	Description
*Country	The Country name that is to be present in the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on configuration. It must be a two-letter country code (for example, US, and so on).
Email Address	The email contact details of the person responsible for maintaining the certificate. Enter the valid e-mail address.
*Validity	Enter the number in this field and select the entered validity list to be in Days , Months , and Years from the dropdown lists.
Challenge Password	The challenge password for the certificate. Enter if it is applicable. Password must contain at least one alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), one number, and one special character.
Confirm Password	The password to confirm the Challenge Password entered and match with the Challenge Password.
*Hash Function	The Hash function with which the CSR has to be signed. For Microsoft Enterprise CA, the targeted CA decides the hash function while issuing the certificate. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.
*Key Type	The key type is used while creating a private and public key pair. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.
*Bit Length	The bit length is used while creating a private and public key pair. This field will be auto-filled and editable based on the configuration in the selected group's policy.

Fields	Description
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. In the **Attachments** section, upload any attachments relevant to the CSR generation process.

Field descriptions for the Attachments section

Field	Description
Name	Enter the alternate name for the document to be uploaded.
Comments	Enter the comments in this field. <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  Note: You can enter a maximum of 2000 words in the field. </div>
Upload File	Click the Upload button to select the file. <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  Note: Maintains if there are any additional documents to be maintained in AppViewX. These documents will not be submitted to CA. It is a non-mandatory section. </div>

 **Tip:** You can use **the Search** option to find the attachments from the attachment list.

6. To generate the CSR and add it to the intended group, click **Add**.

Certificate Inventory

The Certificate Inventory allows you to take inventory of, and proactively manage all your certificates. This will be a single source of truth for all the certificates in the organization. Every certificate action can be performed from the inventory.

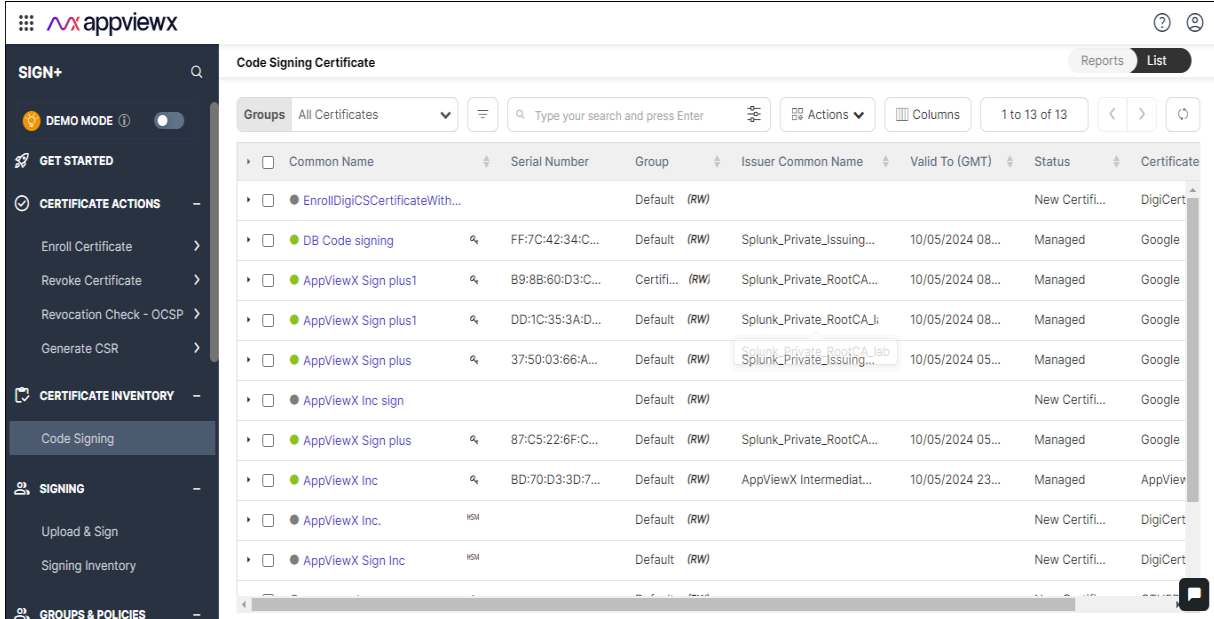
- [Code Signing](#)

Code Signing

Accessing Code Signing in **SIGN+**:

1. Go to  (Menu) > SIGN+.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE INVENTORY**, select **Code Signing**.

The **Code Signing Certificate** page is displayed.



The screenshot displays the 'Code Signing Certificate' page in the AppViewX interface. The page features a sidebar on the left with navigation options like 'SIGN+', 'GET STARTED', 'CERTIFICATE ACTIONS', 'CERTIFICATE INVENTORY', 'SIGNING', and 'GROUPS & POLICIES'. The main content area shows a table of certificates with the following columns: Common Name, Serial Number, Group, Issuer Common Name, Valid To (GMT), Status, and Certificate. The table lists 13 certificates, including entries for 'DB Code signing', 'AppViewX Sign plus1', and 'AppViewX Inc sign'.

Common Name	Serial Number	Group	Issuer Common Name	Valid To (GMT)	Status	Certificate
EnrollDigiCSCertificateWith...		Default (RW)			New Certifi...	DigiCert
DB Code signing	FF:7C:42:34:C...	Default (RW)	Splunk_Private_Issuing...	10/05/2024 08...	Managed	Google
AppViewX Sign plus1	B9:8B:60:D3:C...	Certifi... (RW)	Splunk_Private_RootCA...	10/05/2024 08...	Managed	Google
AppViewX Sign plus1	DD:1C:35:3A:D...	Default (RW)	Splunk_Private_RootCA_I...	10/05/2024 08...	Managed	Google
AppViewX Sign plus	37:50:03:66:A...	Default (RW)	Splunk_Private_RootCA_lab Splunk_Private_Issuing...	10/05/2024 05...	Managed	Google
AppViewX Inc sign		Default (RW)			New Certifi...	Google
AppViewX Sign plus	87:C5:22:6F:C...	Default (RW)	Splunk_Private_RootCA...	10/05/2024 05...	Managed	Google
AppViewX Inc	BD:70:D3:3D:7...	Default (RW)	AppViewX Intermediat...	10/05/2024 23...	Managed	AppView
AppViewX Inc.	HSM	Default (RW)			New Certifi...	DigiCert
AppViewX Sign Inc	HSM	Default (RW)			New Certifi...	DigiCert

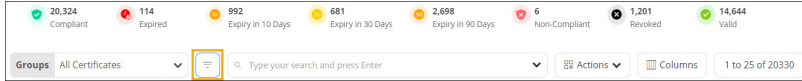
- [Code Signing Certificate Inventory](#)
- [Downloading Certificate](#)
- [Downloading Key](#)
- [Downloading CSR](#)
- [Certificate Regeneration](#)
- [Certificate Renewal](#)
- [Certificate Revoke](#)
- [Suspend Certificate](#)
- [Deleting Code Signing Certificate](#)

Code Signing Certificate Inventory

Code signing certificate inventory displays all the code certificates with the EKU (Extended/Enhanced Key Usage) code signing present. The certificates in this inventory will be shown to the user only based on role-based access control on the certificate group. From this inventory, the user can select one or many certificates and perform bulk certificate revocation checks, search and filter certificates, export certificates, download certificates, delete certificates, and so on.

The **Code Signing Certificate** page is available under **Certificate Inventory** in the left menu.

Options available on the Code Signing Certificate page

Options	Description
Groups	Expanding this dropdown displays the certificate groups and the number of certificates in each group. Selecting a group will display the filtered list of certificates.
Filter Summary	Displays the status of certificates according to expiry, compliance, validity, and so on. 
Search bar	Allows you to search for a certificate(s) within the Code Signing certificate inventory using keywords.
Actions	Displays the list of actions you can perform on the certificates.
Columns	Allows you to select the columns to be displayed on the code signing certificate inventory page.
Toggle	Allows you to toggle between the following display options for the code signing certificate inventory: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • List: Displays the list of code signing certificates.

- [Exporting Code Signing Certificates](#)
- [Downloading Code Signing Certificates](#)
- [Deleting Code Signing Certificates](#)
- [Changing Code Signing Certificate Status](#)
- [Assigning Code Signing Certificate Group](#)
- [Unassigning Code Signing Certificate Group](#)
- [Add/Modify Comments for Code Signing Certificate](#)
- [Updating Certificate Attributes for Code Signing Certificate](#)
- [Revocation Check for Code Signing Certificates](#)

Exporting Code Signing Certificates

Export certificate action allows the user to export certificate details in the form of columns and values. The user can export all the certificates in the inventory or select only specific certificates and export. The output of this action can be selected in **.xls** or **.csv** format. This can be used for reporting or creating an inventory.

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate that you want to export.
2. From the **Actions** dropdown menu, select **Export Certificates**.

The **Export** dialog box is displayed.

3. Select the required **Options** and **Format**.

The selected certificate is exported to your local machine.

Downloading Code Signing Certificates

Code Signing certificates can be downloaded via holistic view only one certificate at a time in multiple formats as PEM, DER, PKCS#7, PKCS#12, and JKS. PKCS#12 and JKS can be downloaded only with the password-protected certificate.

To download code signing certificate:

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate(s) that you want to download.
2. From the **Actions** dropdown, click **Download Certificates**.

The **Download Certificates** pop-up window is displayed.

- a. In the **Download Certificate** pop-up window, select **Certificates Only** or **Certificates and Keys**.
- b. You can also enable/disable **Download Truststore Certificates** option along with the end certificates.



Note: If you have permission to view the restricted content mentioned in Step, the certificate details are downloaded with `<.zip>` file. If you do not have the necessary permissions, the system creates and downloads an empty `<.zip>` file to the destination you specify.

- c. The system enables the **Secret Passphrase** field when you select the **Certificates and Keys** option. Enter a passphrase to encrypt the contents into a `<.ZIP>` file.
3. In the **Download Certificate** dialog box, enter or select the requested field information.

Field Description for Download Certificate

Field	Description
Choose Download Type	Select the certificate download type as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Certificate Only • Certificate and Keys
Download Truststore Certificates	Turn on this toggle to download truststore certificates.
Set Password for Keystore	Enter a passphrase to encrypt the contents into a .zip file.

- In the **Download Certificate** pop-up window, select **Certificates Only** or **Certificates and Keys**.
- You can also enable/disable **the Download Truststore Certificates** option along with the end certificates.



Note: If you have permission to view the restricted content mentioned in Step, the certificate details are downloaded with `<.zip>` file. If you do not have the necessary permissions, the system creates and downloads an empty `<.zip>` file to the destination you specify.

- The system enables the **Secret Passphrase** field when you select **Certificates and Keys**. Enter a passphrase to encrypt the contents into a `<.zip>` file.
- Click **Download**.
 - To view details of the certificate, unzip the file and open the security certificate file.
 - Click **Details**.

Deleting Code Signing Certificates

- On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate that you want to delete.
- From the **Actions** dropdown menu, select **Delete**.

The **Delete Certificate** dialog box is displayed.

- Click **Yes**.

The selected certificate(s) will be deleted.

Changing Code Signing Certificate Status

The status of a certificate can be set as monitored or managed during or after the certificate discovery process and also from the certificate inventory directly. When the certificates are set as Monitored, you can only view the certificate details in reports and in the inventory. When the certificates are set as Managed, the certificate-related actions, along with push/bind operations, can be performed, along with viewing of the certificates in the reports and inventory.

To change the code signing certificate status:

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate for which you want to change status.
2. From the **Actions** dropdown, click **Change Status**.
3. In the **Change Status** dialog box that is displayed, in the **Change Status to** field, select the status of the certificate field as **Managed** or **Monitored**.
4. Enter the reason for changing the status, if required, and click **Yes**.

The certificate status is changed as per the selection.

Assigning Code Signing Certificate Group

The certificates with common attributes can be grouped together to perform compliance checks against policy details, to enable auto-renewal and auto-push operations. You can also view certificates as groups.

To assign a code signing certificate to a group:

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate that you want to assign to a group.
2. From the **Actions** dropdown, click **Assign Group**.
3. In the **Assign to Group** dialog box that is displayed, search for the group that you want to assign the certificate.
4. Select the required certificate group.
5. Enter a reason for assigning the certificate to the selected certificate group, if required, and click **Assign**.

The certificate is assigned to the selected group.

Unassigning Code Signing Certificate Group

You can unassign any certificates from a specific certificate group to the default group. The policy and actions of the default group will be applied to these certificates.

To unassign a code signing certificate from a certificate group:

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate that you want to unassign from a certificate group.
2. From the **Actions** dropdown, click **Unassign Group**.
3. In the **Unassign Group** window that is displayed, enter the reason for unassigning the certificate from the group and click **Unassign**.

The selected certificate is now assigned to the default group.

Add/Modify Comments for Code Signing Certificate

To add/modify comments for certificate(s):

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate that you want to revoke.
2. From the **Actions** dropdown, click **Add/Modify Comments**.
3. In the **Add/Modify Comments** pop-up window that is displayed, enter a comment and click **Save**.

Updating Certificate Attributes for Code Signing Certificate

Other than the fields that are defined for CSR, you can add organization-specific values to a request. These values will not be part of the certificate but will be available in the AppViewX inventory. For example, a cost center Inventory can be filtered based on these attributes.

To update the certificate attribute for a code signing certificate:

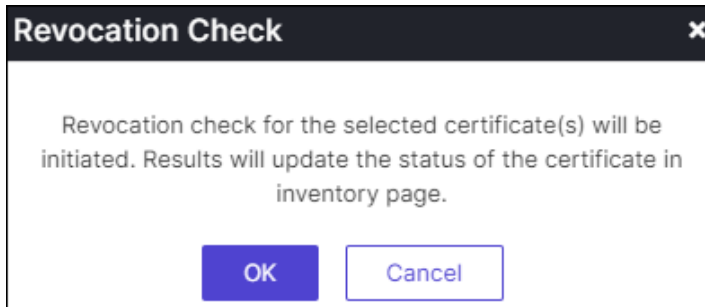
1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate for which you want to update attributes.
2. From the **Actions** dropdown, click **Certificate Attributes**.
3. Update the **Certificate Attributes** and click **Save**.

Revocation Check for Code Signing Certificates

To perform revocation check for a code signing certificate:

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate for which you want to perform a revocation check under **Common Name**.
2. Click **Actions** menu and choose **Revocation Check** from the dropdown.

In the Revocation check dialog box is displayed.



3. Click **OK** to proceed revocation check.

Revocation Check results will be updated on the inventory page.

Downloading Certificate

Code Signing certificates can be downloaded via holistic view only one certificate at a time in multiple formats as PEM, DER, PKCS#7, PKCS#12, and JKS. PKCS#12 and JKS can be downloaded only with the password-protected certificate.

To download code signing certificate:

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate that you want to download.
2. Hover over the three-dot menu for the certificate, and then click **Download Certificate**.



3. The **Download Certificates** pop-up window is displayed.

- a. In the **Download Certificate** pop-up window, select **Certificates Type**.
- b. You can also enable/disable **Download Truststore Certificates** option along with the end certificates.



Note: If you have permission to view the restricted content mentioned in Step, the certificate details are downloaded with <.zip> file. If you do not have the necessary permissions, the system creates and downloads an empty <.zip> file to the destination you specify.

- c. The system enables the **Secret Passphrase** field when you select the **Certificates and Keys** option. Enter a passphrase to encrypt the contents into a <.ZIP> file.
4. In the **Download Certificate** dialog box, enter or select the requested field information.

Field Description for Download Certificate

Field	Description
Choose Download Type	Select the certificate download type as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Certificate Only • Certificate and Keys
Download Truststore Certificates	Turn on this toggle to download truststore certificates.
Set Password for Keystore	Enter a passphrase to encrypt the contents into a .zip file.

5. Click **Yes**.
6. To view details of the certificate, unzip the file and open the security certificate file.
7. Click **Details**.

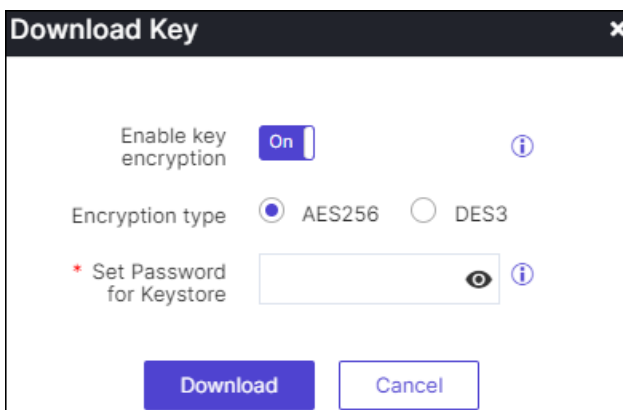
Downloading Key

To download key for code signing certificate:

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate for which you want to download the key.
2. Hover over the three-dot menu for the certificate, and then click **Download Key**.



3. The **Download Key** pop-up window is displayed.



4. If the **Enable key encryption** is enabled, Encryption type option is displayed select the required encryption type.

When the **Enable key encryption** is enabled, the **Encryption type** option becomes visible for selecting the desired encryption type.

5. **Set Password for Keystore** to encrypt the content into .ZIP file.

6. Click **Download**.

The selected certificate key will be Downloaded.

Downloading CSR

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate for which you want to download CSR.
2. Hover over the three-dot menu for the certificate, and then click **Download CSR**.



The certificate CSR will be downloaded.

Certificate Regeneration

Certificate regeneration involves the process of generating a new certificate that replicates the parameters of an existing certificate. Regenerating a certificate entails placing a new order with the Certificate Authority (CA). This option becomes particularly useful when a user intends to transition to a different CA for certificate issuance. During this process, a new Certificate Signing Request (CSR) will be submitted to the CA.

To regenerate Code Signing Certificate, follow these steps:

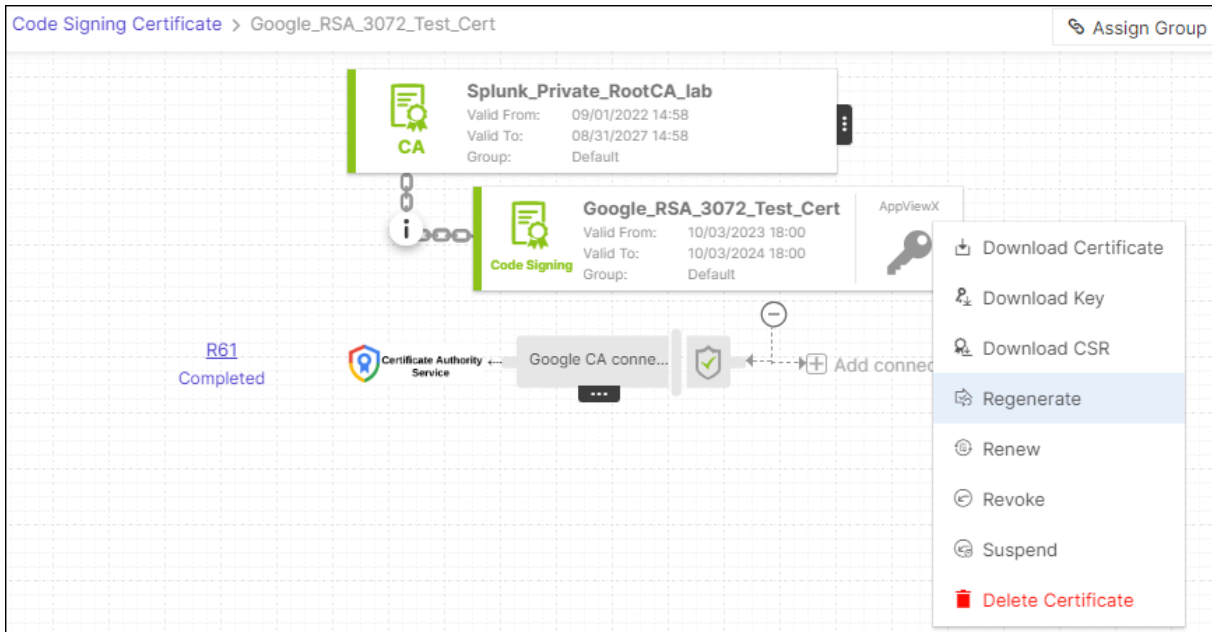
1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+**.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE INVENTORY**, select **Code Signing**.

The **Code Signing Certificate** page is displayed.

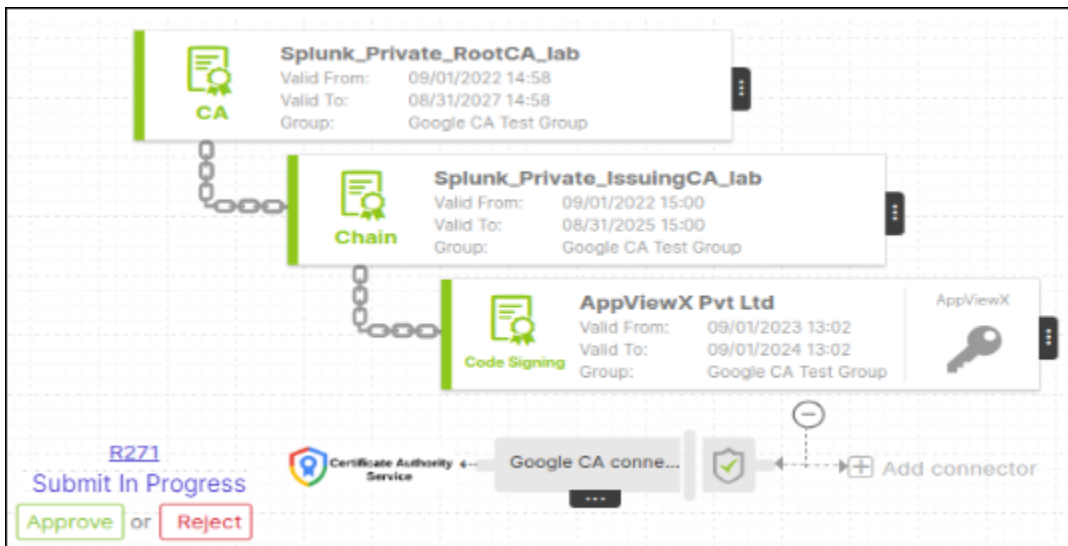
3. To renew a **Code Signing Certificate**, select the certificate name under **Common Name**.

The holistic view of the selected certificate is displayed.

4. Hover over the three-dot menu for the certificate, and then click **Regenerate**.



5. You will be redirected to the **Code Signing Certificate > Regenerate** page.
6. Proceed with the necessary modifications of the required details in the **General Information, CA Details, CSR Parameters, Attachments, Generic Fields** section.
7. Click **Regenerate**.
8. The regenerate process is initiated. On the certificate's holistic view, click **Approve** to proceed.



9. In the **Approve** dialog box, enter your comments (optional).

If you want to schedule automatic approval for the workflow request in the future, click **Schedule later**. You can then choose the Implementation Time from the calendar field.

10. Click **Yes**.
11. On the certificate holistic view, click **Implement** to proceed.
12. In the **Implement** dialog box, enter your comments.

If you want the workflow request to be automatically approved in the future, click **Schedule later**. You can then select the **Implementation Time** from the calendar field.

13. Click **Yes**.
14. After the certificate is regenerated, the status updates to **Completed**.

Certificate Renewal

Code Signing Certificates are issued with a limited validity period. Before the expiration of their validity, the certificates have to be renewed for service continuity. The renewal process is specific to CAs, depending on their operations. The result is the issuance of a certificate with extended validity. SIGN+ enables you to trigger certificate renewals. You can trigger renewal from the certificate's holistic view. During this process, an old Certificate Signing Request (CSR) will be submitted to the CA.

To renew Code Signing Certificate, follow these steps:

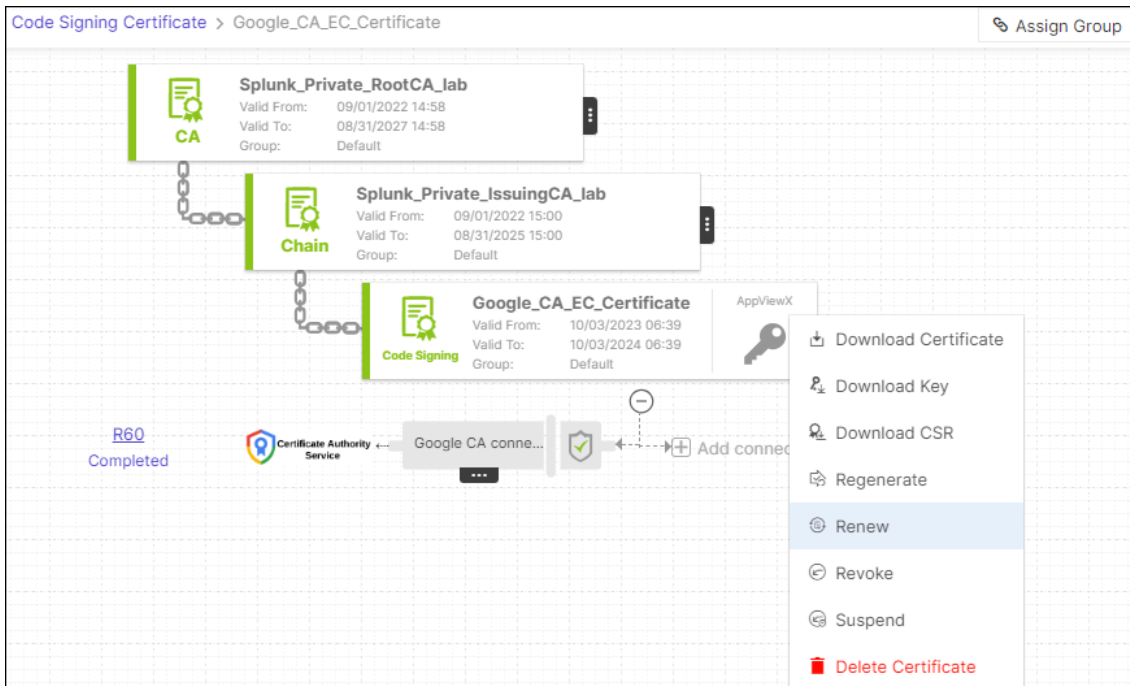
1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+**.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE INVENTORY**, select **Code Signing**.

The **Code Signing Certificate** page is displayed.

3. To renew a **Code Signing Certificate**, select the certificate name under **Common Name**.

The holistic view of the selected certificate is displayed.

4. Hover over the three-dot menu for the certificate, and then click **Renew**.



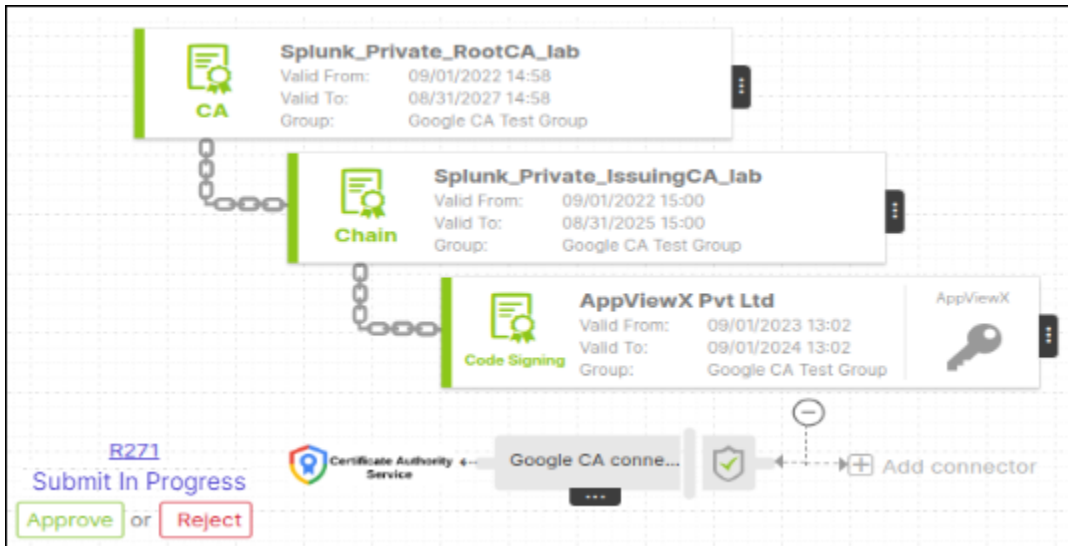
5. You will be redirected to the **Code Signing Certificate > Renew** page.
6. Proceed with the necessary modifications of the required details in the **General Information, CA Details, CSR Parameters, Attachments, Generic Fields** section.
7. Click **Renew**.

The **Renew** dialog box is displayed.

8. Enter your comments in the text field and click **Yes**.

This action automatically generates a request ID, also known as the work order ID. The work order status is displayed next to the certificate in the holistic view. If the 'approval required' option is enabled in the CA policy, the request will progress to the **Approve** and **Implementation** stages.

9. The renewal process is initiated. On the certificate's holistic view, click **Approve** to proceed.



10. In the **Approve** dialog box, enter your comments (optional).

The 'Approve' dialog box features a title bar with a close button. It contains two tabs: 'Now' (selected) and 'Schedule later'. Below the tabs is a 'Comments' text area. At the bottom, there are 'Yes' and 'No' buttons.

If you want to schedule automatic approval for the workflow request in the future, click **Schedule later**.

You can then choose the Implementation Time from the calendar field.

11. Click **Yes**.

12. On the certificate holistic view, click **Implement** to proceed.

13. In the **Implement** dialog box, enter your comments.

The 'Implement' dialog box features a title bar with a close button. It contains two tabs: 'Now' and 'Schedule later' (selected). Below the tabs is an 'Implementation Time' field with a calendar icon. Below that is a 'Comments' text area. At the bottom, there are 'Yes' and 'No' buttons.

If you want the workflow request to be automatically approved in the future, click **Schedule later**. You can then select the **Implementation Time** from the calendar field.

14. Click **Yes**.

15. The renewal process is initiated. Once the renewal is finished, the workflow status will be updated to **Completed**.

Certificate Revoke

Revocation is the process of making a certificate invalid. For example, you might need to revoke a certificate if the certificate is no longer required or the certificate's private key is compromised. Make sure that you have permission to revoke a certificate and submit a request to the certificate authority. As soon as the certificate is revoked, it is not considered to be a trusted certificate. Revoked certificates are listed in the Certificate Revocation List (CRL) maintained by each certificate authority.

To revoke Code Signing Certificate, follow these steps:

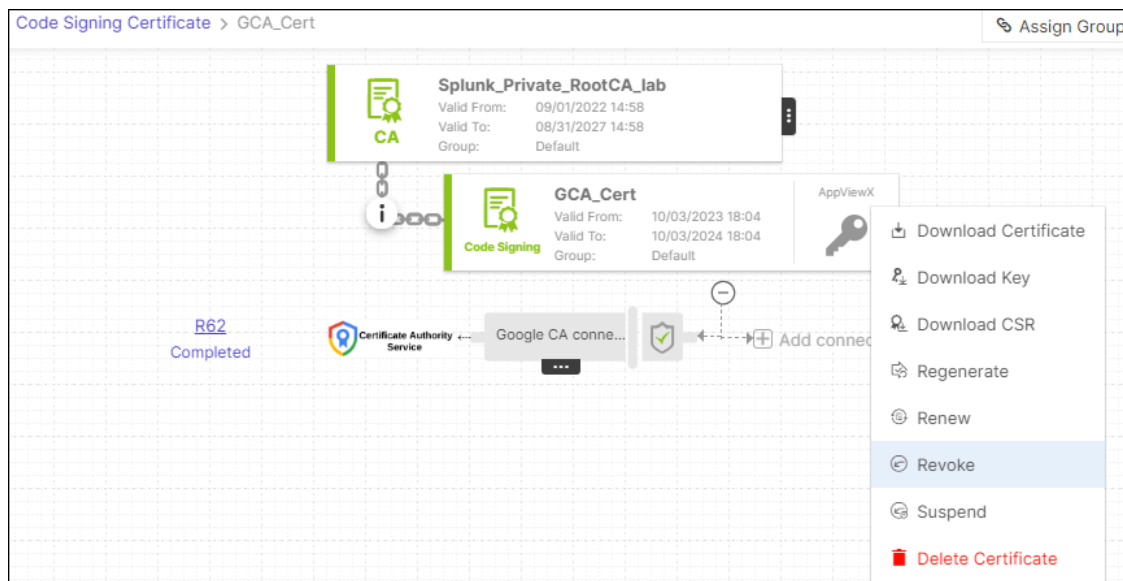
1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+**.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE INVENTORY**, select **Code Signing**.

The **Code Signing Certificate** page is displayed.

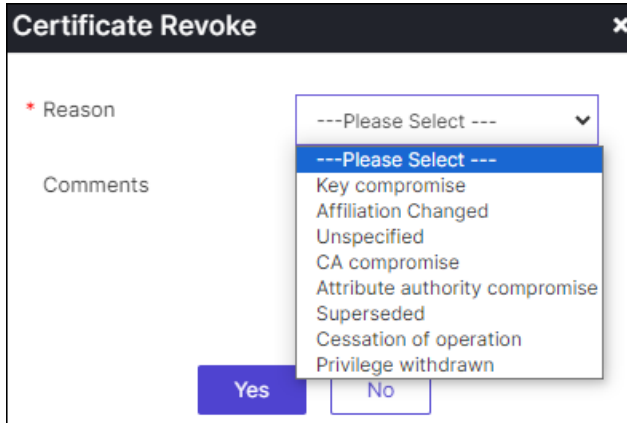
3. To revoke a **Code Signing Certificate**, select the certificate name under **Common Name**.

The holistic view of the selected certificate is displayed.

4. Hover over the three-dot menu for the certificate, and then click **Revoke**.



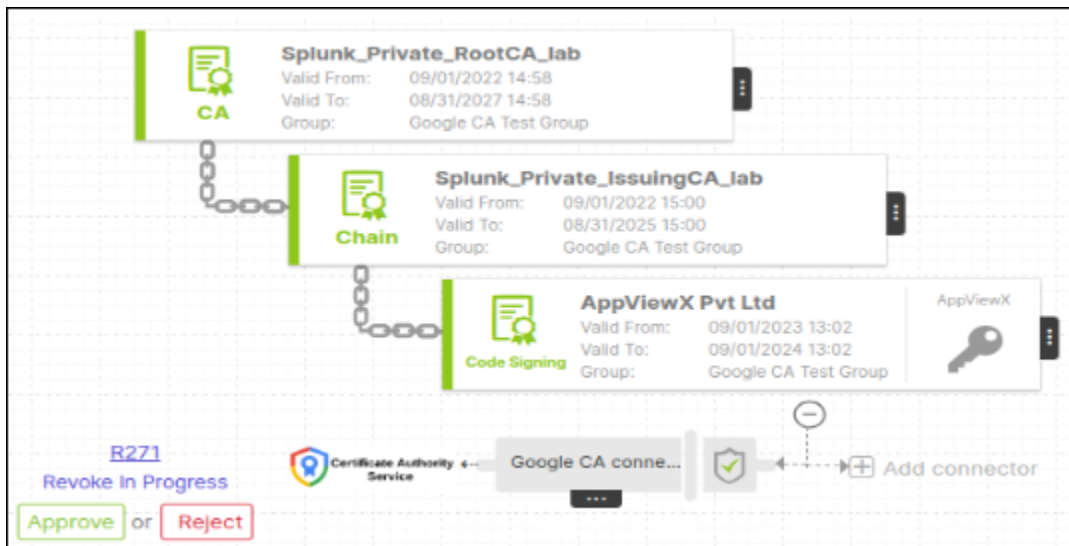
- The **Certificate Revoke** dialog box is displayed.
- In the **Certificate Revoke** dialog box, select the reason for revoking the certificate from the dropdown list.
- You can also enter comments in the Comments text field (optional), and then click **Yes**.



- The revoke process is initiated for the selected certificate.

If the **Approval Required** checkbox is enabled, the request will progress through the **Approve** and **Implementation** stages.

- To proceed, click **Approve** on the certificate's holistic view.



- In the **Approve** dialog box, enter your comments (optional).

If you want to schedule automatic approval for the workflow request in the future, click **Schedule later**. You can then choose the Implementation Time from the calendar field.

11. Click **Yes**.
12. On the certificate holistic view, click **Implement** to proceed.
13. In the **Implement** dialog box, enter your comments.

If you want the workflow request to be automatically approved in the future, click **Schedule later**. You can then select the **Implementation Time** from the calendar field.

14. Click **Yes**.
15. After the certificate is revoked, the status updates to **Completed**.

Suspend Certificate

Follow the steps below to suspend certificate:

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate that you want to suspend.
2. Hover over the three-dot menu for the certificate, and then click **Suspend**.



3. In the **Certificate Suspend** dialog box, select the reason for suspending the certificate from the dropdown.
4. You can also enter comments in the comments text field (optional), and then click **Yes**.

The selected certificate will be suspended.

Deleting Code Signing Certificate

1. On the **Code Signing Certificate** page, select the certificate that you want to delete.
2. Hover over the three-dot menu for the certificate, and then click **Delete Certificate**.



3. Delete Certificate **Confirmation** dialog box is displayed.
4. Click **Yes**.

The selected certificate will be deleted.

Signing Inventory

The Signing Inventory functions as a centralized repository that consolidates all your signed files. It offers a comprehensive overview of each signed asset, encompassing crucial details such as the signing timestamp, the applied signing policy, the certificate key used for signing, timestamping specifics, file type, signing type (HASH-based or FILE-based), associated username, and the IP address used during signing. Moreover, it provides visibility into the status of each file, indicating whether it has been successfully signed or not.


This feature empowers you to efficiently manage and monitor your signed files, with the ability to download or delete them as needed, making it a valuable tool for your signing process management.

- [Upload and sign](#)
- [Accessing Signing Inventory](#)

Upload and sign

The **Upload and Sign** page enables users to upload a file for digital signing. On this page, users can choose from a selection of signing policies and the associated certificate keys to sign their uploaded files. Some signing policies may include specific meta-information configurations, ensuring that the signed files adhere to predefined policy requirements.

To **Upload and Sign** a file using Code Signing Certificate, follow these steps:

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **SIGNING** > **Upload & Sign**.


The **Upload and Sign** page is displayed.

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Upload and sign". Under the "General Details" section, there are three required fields, each marked with an asterisk:


- Select Signing Policy:** A dropdown menu with "Select..." and an information icon.
- Select Signing Key:** A dropdown menu with "Select..." and an information icon.
- Upload File:** A dashed box containing a cloud upload icon, the text "Drag and drop a file here or Browse", and an information icon.

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: a blue "Sign" button and a white "Reset" button with a blue border.


2. Enter the required details, under **General Details** section.
 - a. **Select Signing Policy:** Select the suitable signing policy according to your specific needs, considering any configurations applied during the signing policy's creation.

 **Note:** The default policy name is set as the first policy in the dropdown.

- b. **Select Signing Key:** Select the signing key that corresponds to the policy selected in the previous step.

 **Note:** The default signing key is set as the signing key of first policy in the dropdown.

- c. For **specific policies**, you may need to provide **additional information**. Kindly enter these details as configured in the selected signing policy.
 - d. **Upload File:** Only selected file types during policy creation are allowed for upload.

 **Note:** Signing operations for the HSM-based certificates for the script files will be supported by upgrading the JSign Version from 3.0 to 5.0.

3. Click **Sign** to initiate the signing process.
4. After the signing process is complete, the file will appear in the Signing Inventory, where you can proceed to download it.


What to do next:

- [Download Code Signed file](#) that have been digitally signed and verified.

Accessing Signing Inventory

You have to access the **SIGN+** node to access the various functions provided by it.

To access Signing Inventory:

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **Signing** > **Signing Inventory**.

The **Signing Inventory** page is displayed.

Signing Inventory									
<input type="text" value="Search..."/>						<input type="button" value="Upload"/>	<input type="button" value="Actions"/>	<input type="button" value="1 to 5 of 5"/>	<input type="button" value="<"/> <input type="button" value=">"/> <input type="button" value="Refresh"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	File Name	Signing Ti...	Policy	Time Stam...	File Type	Status	Signed Type	IP Address	Signing Key
<input type="checkbox"/>	Firefox Inst...	2023-10-0...	exeSign	2023-10-0...	EXE	Signed	File Based ...	192.168.99.61	AppViewX ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	Hash_Db_Si...	2023-10-0...	Db_Signing...	NA	HASH	Signed	Hash Based...	192.168.22...	AppViewX ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	Hash_Db_Si...	2023-10-0...	Db_Signing...	NA	HASH	Signed	Hash Based...	192.168.22...	AppViewX ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	Hash_Db_Si...	2023-10-0...	Db_Signing...	NA	HASH	Signed	Hash Based...	192.168.22...	AppViewX ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	Hash_Db_Si...	2023-10-0...	Db_Signing...	NA	HASH	Signed	Hash Based...	192.168.22...	AppViewX ...

2. Select one or more inventory files to be **Downloaded** or **Deleted**.
3. From the command bar on the top right, click **Actions**.
4. From the list of available actions, select **Download** or **Delete**.
5. To **Download** or **Delete** the selected file, click **Yes** in the **Confirm download** or **delete** pop-up window.
6. The selected file will be **Downloaded** or **Deleted**.
7. Additionally, you have the option to **Upload** file.
8. From the command bar, click **Upload**.

The **Upload & Sign** page is displayed, where you can proceed with file upload.

9. To select a file to be uploaded to the signing inventory, click **Browse**.
10. Select the required file and click **Upload**.

Integration with CI/CD pipeline

SIGN+ Integration with CI/CD pipeline refers to the seamless inclusion of code signing processes using SIGN+ (a code signing solution) within a continuous integration and continuous deployment pipeline, ensuring that all code releases are securely signed before deployment.

- [Need for Code Signing](#)
- [Integrating Code Signing in Jenkins Pipeline](#)
- [Integrating Code Signing in GitLab Pipeline](#)
- [Appendix](#)

Need for Code Signing

CI/CD is a Software Development Life Cycle (SDLC) process that supports agile development methodologies designed to deliver software in frequent release cycles rapidly and with high quality.

When code or software is ready for production, it is released to organizations and departments for installation on their systems. Prior to release, the code can be signed to verify the identity of the publisher and ensure it hasn't been altered. This increases the authenticity and integrity of the code, enhancing trust and security.

Integration with CI/CD tools automates code signing, ensuring compliance with security policies without slowing down development. This improves the overall efficiency of the process. Additionally, signing code from external sources included in the CI/CD process provides assurance and trust in their inclusion within the software development process.

Integrating Code Signing in Jenkins Pipeline

- [Jenkins](#)
- [Jenkins Pipeline](#)
- [Jenkinsfile](#)
- [Code Signing Integration with Native Tools](#)
- [Code Signing Integration with AppViewX CSP/PKCS#11](#)

Jenkins

Jenkins is a self-contained, open-source automation server that can be used to automate all sorts of tasks related to building, testing, and delivering or deploying software.

Jenkins can be installed through native system packages, Docker, or even run standalone by any machine with a Java Runtime Environment (JRE) installed.

Jenkins Pipeline

Jenkins Pipeline is a suite of plugins that support implementing and integrating continuous delivery pipelines into Jenkins. Pipeline adds a powerful set of automation tools to Jenkins, supporting use cases that span from simple continuous integration to comprehensive CD pipelines.

Pipeline provides an extensible set of tools for modeling simple-to-complex delivery pipelines "as code" via the Pipeline domain-specific language (DSL) syntax.

Jenkinsfile

A Jenkinsfile is a text file that defines the entire pipeline of a Jenkins job or build process. It allows you to define the various stages, their order, and the actions or steps to be executed within each stage. A sample Jenkins file content is as follows:

```
pipeline {
  agent any
  stages {
    stage('Build') {
      steps {
        //
      }
    }
    stage('Test') {
      steps {
        //
      }
    }
    stage('Deploy') {
      steps {
        //
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Code Signing Integration with Native Tools

SignTool

To sign with SignTool:

```
stage('sign') {
    steps {
        // Using Certificate
        bat 'signtool.exe sign /f certificate.p12 /p <password> /tr <timestamp URL> /fd <digest algorithm> <file to be signed>'

        // Using CSP
        bat 'signtool.exe sign /csp "<CSP Provider Name>" /kc "<Key Container Name>"
        /f certificate.crt /fd <digest algorithm> /tr <timestamp URL> <file to be signed>'
    }
}
```

The input parameters are the alias of the keypair used for signing, the name or alias of the certificate that needs to be used for signing, and the path to the file that needs to be signed.

Jarsigner

To sign with Jarsigner:

```
stage('sign') {
    steps {
        // For Windows
        bat 'jarsigner -keystore NONE -storetype Windows-My -signedjar <signed_file>.jar -sigalg SHA256withRSA -digestalg SHA256 <jarfile> <alias>'

        // For Linux
        sh 'jarsigner -keystore <path_to_keystore> -storepass <keystore_password> -signedjar <signed_file>.jar -sigalg SHA256withRSA -digestalg SHA256 <jarfile>
        <alias>'
    }
}
```

The input parameters are the path where the signed jar needs to be output, the path to the keystore and its password, the path to the jar that needs to be signed, and the name or alias of the certificate that needs to be used for signing.

Code Signing Integration with AppViewX CSP/PKCS#11

Using Signtool with AppViewX CSP

Follow the steps below to integrate:

1. Use the AppViewX CSP Setup Installer to associate the signing certificate with the AppViewX CSP.
2. Update the Jenkinsfile with the appropriate stage and steps.

```
stage('sign') {
  steps {

    // Using CSP

    bat 'signtool.exe sign /csp "AppViewX_CSP" /kc "<Key Container Name>"
    /f certificate.cer /fd <digest algorithm> /tr <timestamp URL> <file to be signed>'

  }
}
```

Obtain the <Key Container Name> from the AppViewX CSP Setup Installer.

Using JarSigner with AppViewX CSP

Follow the steps below to integrate:

1. Use the AppViewX CSP Setup Installer to associate the signing certificate with the AppViewX CSP.
2. Update the Jenkinsfile with the appropriate stage and steps.

```
stage('sign') {
  steps {

    bat 'jarsigner.exe^
-verbose^
-storetype Windows-My^
-Keystore NONE c:\Source\android-rottentomatoes-demo-master\libs\picasso-2.1.1.jar "Sample Code Signers Are Us, LLC"^
-tsa http://timestamp.digicert.com'

  }
}
```

In the example above, the `-storetype` parameter specifies the local trust store, which triggers the AppViewX CSP. The key being used has a common name of “Sample Code Signers Are Us, LLC”, and the binary being signed is the Picasso-2.1.1.jar file. This sample also uses a DigiCert timestamp server.

Using JarSigner with the AppViewX PKCS#11 Provider

Follow the steps below to integrate:

1. Create a configuration file.

For example: `/root/avxpkcs11.conf`

Sample configuration file:

```
name = avxPKCS11
library = "/opt/custom/codesign/lib/avx_pkcs11.so"
slot = 0
```

To configure globally, add a provider to `java.security`, which applies to all use of Java on the system.

For example:

```
...
security.provider.6=sun.security.jgss.SunProvider
security.provider.7=com.sun.security.sasl.Provider
security.provider.8=org.jcp.xml.dsig.internal.dom.XMLDSigRI
security.provider.9=sun.security.smartcardio.SunPCSC
security.provider.10=sun.security.pkcs11.SunPKCS11 /root/avxpkcs11.conf
...
```

2. Update the Jenkinsfile with the appropriate stage and steps.

```
stage('sign') {
  steps {
    sh 'jarsigner \
    -verbose /root/libintl.jar Sample-Development-Environment \
    -keystore NONE \
    -storetype PKCS11 \
    -certs \
    -storepass none \
    -providerclass sun.security.pkcs11.SunPKCS11 \
    -providerArg /Users/codesign/avxpkcs11.conf'
  }
}
```

To know more about AppViewX CSP and PKCS#11 Provider, refer [Appendix](#).

Integrating Code Signing in GitLab Pipeline

- [GitLab](#)
- [GitLab Pipeline](#)
- [GitLab Configuration File](#)
- [Code Signing Integration with Native Tools](#)
- [Code Signing Integration with AppViewX CSP/PKCS#11](#)

GitLab

GitLab is a web-based DevOps platform that provides a complete set of tools for managing the software development lifecycle. It is built on top of the Git version control system and offers features for source code management, continuous integration and deployment (CI/CD), project management, and collaboration.

GitLab Pipeline

In GitLab, a pipeline is a series of stages and jobs that define the steps for building, testing, and deploying your software. It is a core feature of GitLab's CI/CD capabilities.

The pipeline is divided into various stages, and each stage consists of one or more jobs. Agents called GitLab Runners execute the jobs defined in the pipeline when they are triggered by various events such as code pushes, merge requests, etc.

GitLab Configuration File

The GitLab CI/CD configurations are defined in the root repository in a file called **".gitlab-ci.yml"**. In the file, you can define the scripts to be run, dependencies, commands to run in order, and other configuration files and templates to be included.

A `.gitlab-ci.yml` file might contain:

```
stages:
  - build
  - test

build-code-job:
  stage: build
  script:
    - echo "Check the ruby version, then build some Ruby project files:"
    - ruby -v
    - rake

test-code-job1:
  stage: test
  script:
    - echo "If the files are built successfully, test some files with one command:"
    - rake test1
```

```
test-code-job2:
stage: test
script:
- echo "If the files are built successfully, test other files with a different command:"
- rake test2
```

Code Signing Integration with Native Tools

SignTool

To sign with SignTool:

```
stages:
- set-SM-certificate

set_SM_certificate:
stage: set-SM-certificate
script: - |

    & $SIGNTOOL sign /sha1 <certificate thumbprint> /tr http://timestamp.digicert.com /td SHA256 /fd SHA256 <file to be signed>
```

The input parameters are the thumbprint of the certificate to be used for signing and the path to the **.exe** or **.dll** to be signed.

Jarsigner

To sign with Jarsigner:

```
stages:
- Jarsigner-Signing

Jarsigner_signing:
stage: Jarsigner-Signing
script:
- |

    jarsigner -keystore <keystore_path> -storepass <keystore_password> -sigalg SHA256withRSA -signedjar <Path to Output Signed Jar> <Path to the Jar to be Signed> <certificate_alias> -tsa http://timestamp.digicert.com
```

The input parameters are the path where the signed jar needs to be output, the path to the keystore and its password, the path to the jar that needs to be signed, and the name or alias of the certificate that needs to be used for signing.

Code Signing Integration with AppViewX CSP/PKCS#11

Using Signtool with AppViewX CSP

Follow the steps below to integrate:

1. Use the AppViewX CSP Setup Installer to associate the signing certificate with the AppViewX CSP.
2. Update the `.gitlab-ci.yml` with the appropriate stage and steps.

```
stages:
  - set-SM-certificate

set_SM_certificate:
  stage: set-SM-certificate
  script:
    - |
      & $SIGNTOOL sign /csp "AppViewX_CSP" /kc "<Key Container Name>"
      /f certificate.cer /fd <digest algorithm> /tr <timestamp URL> <file to be signed>
```

Obtain the `<Key Container Name>` from the AppViewX CSP Setup Installer.

Using JarSigner with AppViewX CSP

Follow the steps below to integrate:

1. Use the AppViewX CSP Setup Installer to associate the signing certificate with the AppViewX CSP.
2. Update the `.gitlab-ci.yml` with the appropriate stage and script.

```
stages:
  - Jarsigner-Signing

Jarsigner_signing:
  stage: Jarsigner-Signing
  script:
    - |
      Jarsigner.exe -verbose -storetype Windows-My -Keystore NONE c:\Source\android-rottentomatoes-demo-master\libs\picasso-2.1.1.jar "Sample Code
      Signers Are Us, LLC" -tsa http://timestamp.digicert.com
```

In the example above, the `-storetype` parameter specifies the local trust store, which triggers the AppViewX CSP. The key being used has a common name of “Sample Code Signers Are Us, LLC”, and the binary being signed is the Picasso-2.1.1.jar file. This sample also uses a DigiCert timestamp server.

Using JarSigner with AppViewX PKCS#11 Provider

Follow the steps below to integrate:

1. Create a configuration file.

For example: `/root/avxpkcs11.conf`

Sample configuration file:

```
name = avxPKCS11
library = "/opt/custom/codesign/lib/avx_pkcs11.so"
slot = 0
```

To configure globally, add a provider to `java.security`, which applies to all use of Java on the system.

For example:

```
...
security.provider.6=sun.security.jgss.SunProvider
security.provider.7=com.sun.security.sasl.Provider
security.provider.8=org.jcp.xml.dsig.internal.dom.XMLDSigRI
security.provider.9=sun.security.smartcardio.SunPCSC
security.provider.10=sun.security.pkcs11.SunPKCS11 /root/avxpkcs11.conf
...
```

2. Update the `.gitlab-ci.yml` with the appropriate stage and script.

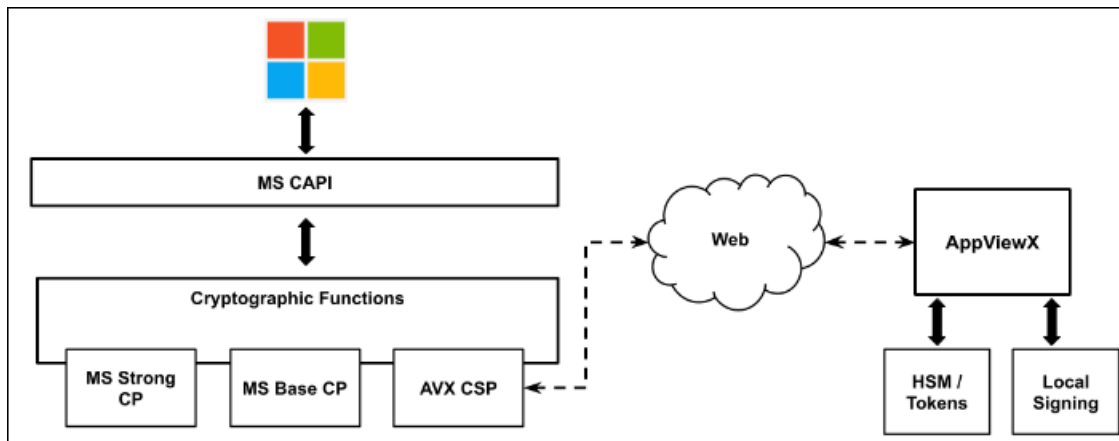
```
stages:
  - Jarsigner-Signing
Jarsigner_signing:
  stage: Jarsigner-Signing
  script:
    - |
      jarsigner \
      -verbose /root/libintl.jar Sample-Development-Environment \
      -keystore NONE \
      -storetype PKCS11 \
      -certs \
      -storepass none \
```

```
-providerclass sun.security.pkcs11.SunPKCS11 \
-providerArg /Users/codesign/avxpkcs11.conf
```

To know more about AppViewX CSP and PKCS#11 Provider, refer [Appendix](#).

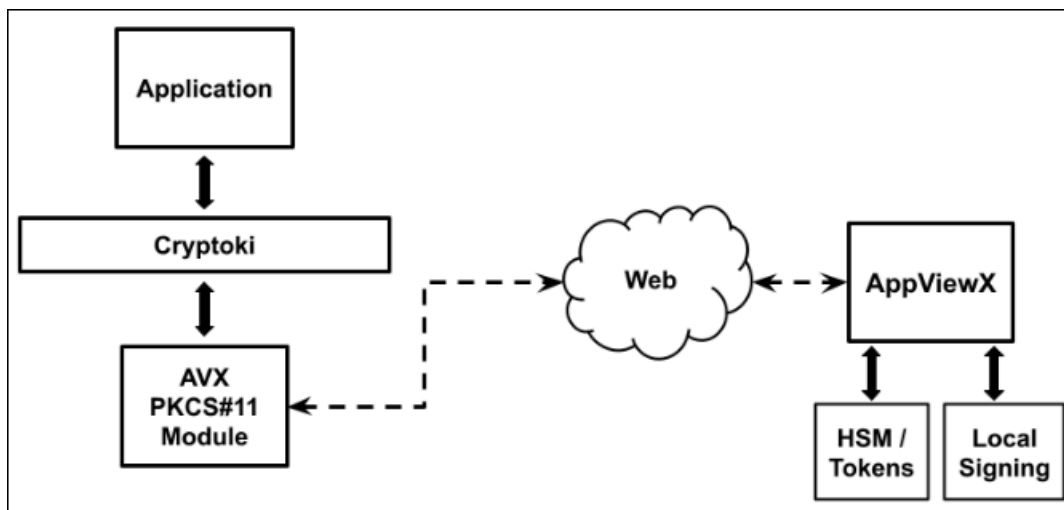
Appendix

AppViewX Cryptographic Service Provider (CSP) Working Flow



The AppViewX CSP offers built-in integration with Windows Crypto API function calls, allowing seamless compatibility with native signing tools such as Microsoft Signtool. This integration enables secure remote communication with AppViewX's centralized key management solution, facilitating efficient on-demand code signing processes.

AppViewX PKCS#11 Provider Working Flow



The AppViewX PKCS11 Provider seamlessly integrates with native PKCS11 tools, ensuring compatibility and interoperability. This integration enables secure and efficient communication with AppViewX's centralized key management solution, facilitating on-demand code signing processes effectively.

Integrating SIGN+ using Native Tools

- [Signtool](#)
- [JARSigner](#)
- [APKSigner](#)
- [JSign](#)

Signtool

SignTool is a command-line tool included with Microsoft Visual Studio and the Windows Software Development Kit (SDK). It is primarily used for code-signing Windows executables and files to indicate their authenticity and origin. SignTool allows developers and software publishers to sign their software with digital signatures, which can be used to verify the integrity and source of the files.

- [Common Use Cases for SignTool](#)
- [File types that can be signed using SignTool](#)
- [Downloading SignTool](#)
- [Setting the PATH Environment Variable](#)
- [Signing with SignTool](#)
- [Verification with SignTool](#)

Common Use Cases for SignTool

- **Code Signing:** SignTool is often used to digitally sign executable files (such as .exe and .dll) and script files (like .msi, .cab, and .ps1) on the Windows platform.
- **Driver Signing:** Device drivers for Windows must be signed with a digital signature to ensure compatibility and security.
- **Timestamping:** SignTool can apply timestamp signatures to files, ensuring the signature remains valid even after the certificate has expired.
- **Verification:** SignTool can verify the digital signatures of files to confirm their authenticity.

File types that can be signed using SignTool

Here's a list of file types that can be signed using SignTool (64-bit) and SignTool (32-bit) separately, presented as comma-separated values:

- **SignTool (64-bit):**

.appx, .appxbundle, .arx, .cab, .cat, .cbx, .cpl, .crx, .dbx, .deploy, .dll, .drx, .efi, .exe, .js, .msi, .msix, .msixbundle, .msm, .

- **SignTool (32-bit):**

.doc, .docm, .dot, .dotm, .mpp, .mpt, .pot, .potm, .ppa, .ppam, .pps, .ppsm, .ppsm, .ppt, .pptm, .pub, .vdw*, .vdx*, .vsd*, .

Downloading SignTool

SignTool is included in the Windows Software Development Kit (SDK). To install it:

- Download the Windows SDK.
- Run the winsdksetup.exe file.
- Follow the wizard's instructions to complete the installation.
- SignTool (64-bit) is located in:

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\bin\10.0.22621.0\x64
```

- SignTool (32-bit) is located in:

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\bin\10.0.22621.0\x86
```

It is recommended to copy and rename the 32-bit version to differentiate it from the 64-bit version.

Setting the PATH Environment Variable

Operating systems use the environment variable called PATH to determine where executable files are stored on your system. You can use the PATH environment variable to store the file path to your signing tools to ensure that the command-line interface (CLI) can reference these signing tools.

To set the path to your signing tools via the command line:

```
set PATH=%path%;<path_to_signing_tool_folder>
```

Command Sample:

```
set PATH=%path%;C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\bin\10.0.22621.0\x64\
```

To set the path to your signing tools for your system or account:

1. Search for "environment variables" in the Windows start menu.
2. Select "Edit environment variables for your account" or "Edit system environment variables."
3. In the "Environment Variables" window, locate the "Path" variable under "System Variables" or "User Variables."
4. Double-click on the "Path" variable.
5. Click **New**.
6. Select **Browse**.
7. Navigate to the path where the signing tool is located. For example: `C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\bin\10.0.22621.0\x64\`
8. Click **OK** to save the path.
9. Click **OK** again to close the "Environment Variables" dialog.

By following these steps, you'll set the PATH environment variable to include the folder containing `signtool.exe`, ensuring that the command line can access the signing tools.

Signing with SignTool

To sign a file with SignTool, use a command like this:

```
signtool.exe sign /f "YourCertificate" /fd sha256 /csp <csp_name> /k <key_alias_name> /t <timestamp_url> <input_file_path>
```

- **/f "YourCertificate"**: Path to your code-signing certificate.
- **/fd sha256**: Specifies the hashing algorithm (SHA-256 is recommended).
- **/csp <csp_name>**: Replace <csp_name> with the name of your cryptographic service provider (CSP).
- **/k <key_alias_name>**: Replace <key_alias_name> with the alias name of your key.
- **/t <timestamp_url>**: Provides a timestamp from a trusted timestamping authority.
- **<input_file_path>**: Path to the file you want to sign.

Verification with SignTool

The following command can be used to verify the signed file:

```
signtool.exe verify /v /pa <input_file_path>
```

JARSigner

The Java Development Kit (JDK) provides the JarSigner tool, which developers use to sign Java Archive (JAR) files and other Java-related files, including Java Web Start applications and Java applets. It is

primarily used to verify the authenticity and integrity of Java applications and libraries. JarSigner adds digital signatures to JAR files, which allows users and systems to confirm that the files have not been tampered with since they were signed and that they come from a trusted source.

Here are some key features and use cases of JarSigner:

- **Code Integrity:** JarSigner is used to sign Java applications and libraries to ensure their code integrity. When users or systems run a signed JAR file, the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) can verify the digital signature to ensure that the code has not been altered since it was signed.
- **Authentication:** JarSigner helps establish the authenticity of the software publisher. By signing JAR files with a digital certificate issued by a trusted certificate authority (CA), software publishers can prove their identity to users and systems.
- **Java Web Start:** JarSigner is commonly used with Java Web Start applications. When users launch a Java Web Start application, the JRE checks the digital signature of the JAR files it downloads to ensure their validity and security.
- **Java Applets:** JarSigner can also be used to sign Java applets, which are small Java applications that run within web browsers. This allows web browsers to verify the applet's source and integrity.
- **Timestamping:** JarSigner can add timestamp information to the digital signature. Timestamping ensures that the signature remains valid even after the certificate used for signing has expired. This is particularly important for long-lived applications.

To use JarSigner, you typically need a code-signing certificate issued by a CA. You then use JarSigner to apply the digital signature to the JAR files. When distributing Java applications, especially those that users will download from the internet, signing with JarSigner is an important security practice to establish trust.

JarSigner is a command-line tool, and its usage involves specifying the JAR file to be signed, the digital certificate to use, and other optional parameters such as timestamping. Once the JAR file is signed, it can be distributed to users with confidence in its authenticity and integrity.

- [Sign with Jarsigner](#)
- [Install Jarsigner](#)
- [Set the PATH environment variable](#)
- [Sign with Jarsigner](#)
- [Verify Signed Artifact with JarSigner](#)

Sign with Jarsigner

Use Jarsigner to sign, timestamp, and verify the following file types:

- **.ear**
- **.jar (tested)**
- **.sar**
- **.war**

Install Jarsigner

Windows

To download the JDK from Oracle:

1. Navigate to Oracle > JDK 17 > Windows.
2. Download the **x64 MSI** installer.
3. Run the `jdk-17_windows_x64_bin.msi` file that was downloaded.
4. Follow the instructions in the wizard to complete the installation.

Jarsigner.exe should be located in the file path: `C:\Program Files\Java\jdk-17\bin`

Alternatively, you can download and install the JDK from OpenJDK.

Linux

On Debian and Ubuntu Linux distributions:

1. Open the Terminal application.
2. To install Java, run:

```
sudo apt install -y default-jdk
```

3. To verify the Java version, run:

```
java --version
```

On RHEL, CentOS, and Fedora Linux distributions:

1. Open the Terminal application.
2. To install Java, run:

```
yum install java-1.8.0-openjdk.x86_64
```

3. To verify the Java version, run:

```
java -version
```

Set the PATH environment variable

Operating systems use the environment variable called PATH to determine where executable files are stored on your system. Use the PATH environment variable to store the file path to your signing tools to ensure that the CLI can reference these signing tools.

Windows

You can configure the signing tools using the command line or environment variables.

To set the path to your signing tools via the command line:

```
set PATH=%path%;<path to signing tool folder>
```

To set the path to your signing tools for your system or account:

1. Search for environment variables in the Windows start menu.
2. Select Edit environment variables for your account or Edit system environment variables.
3. Double-click on the Path variable.
4. Click **New**.
5. Select Browse.
6. Select the path to the signing tool.
7. Click **OK** to save the path.
8. Click **OK** to close the dialog box.

Linux

To set the path to your signing tools via the command line:

1. Launch the Terminal application.
2. Open the file in an editor:

```
nano ~/.profile
```

3. Add any export definitions you need:

```
export PATH=<Path to Jarsigner>
```

4. Click **CTRL+X** to exit.
5. Click **Y** to save.

6. Click Enter to keep the same file name.
7. Execute the new .profile by restarting Terminal or using:

```
source ~/.profile
```

Sign with Jarsigner

Windows

AppViewX CSP with JarSigner:

```
jarsigner.exe -verbose -storetype "Windows-My" -keyStore NONE -tsa <time_stamp_url> <input_file_path> -signedjar <output_file_path> "AppViewX Pvt Ltd"
```

Windows/Linux

AppViewX PKCS#11 Provider with JarSigner:

```
jarsigner.exe -verbose -keystore NONE -storetype PKCS11 -certs -providerclass sun.security.pkcs11.SunPKCS11 -providerArg "C:\Users\admin\AppData\Roaming\AppDataViewX Sign+\AVXPKCS11V1.cfg" <input_file_path> -signedjar <output_file_path> -tsa <time_stamp_url> "AppViewX Pvt Ltd's Splunk_Private_IssuingCA_lab"
```

Verify Signed Artifact with JarSigner

The following command can be used to verify signed artifact with JarSigner:

```
jarsigner.exe -verify -verbose <input_file_path>
```

APKSigner

APKSigner is a tool commonly used in Android app development to sign Android application packages (APK files). Signing APK files is a critical step in the Android app development process, as it ensures the authenticity and integrity of the app.

- [Purpose of APK Signing](#)
- [Key Points about APKSigner](#)
- [Files that can be signed with Apksigner and PKCS11](#)
- [Installation of Apksigner](#)
- [Setting PATH Environment Variables](#)

- [Signing with Apksigner](#)
- [Verifying the Signature with Apksigner](#)

Purpose of APK Signing

Authentication: When you sign an APK file, you attach a digital signature to it using a cryptographic key. This signature serves as proof that the app has not been tampered with and that it comes from a trusted source. Users and Android devices use this signature to verify the app's legitimacy.

Integrity: The signature also ensures the integrity of the APK. If any changes are made to the APK after it is signed, the signature becomes invalid. This prevents malicious parties from modifying the app's code or resources.

Updates: When you release updates to your app, you must sign them with the same key as the original APK. This allows users to update the app without losing their data or settings.

Key Points about APKSigner

Command-Line Tool: APKSigner is typically used as a command-line tool, and it's available for Windows, macOS, and Linux.

Signing Key: To sign APK files, you need a signing key, which includes a private key for signing and a corresponding public key for verifying the signature. It is crucial to protect your signing key because it's the foundation of your app's trustworthiness.

Google Play Store: If you intend to publish your app on the Google Play Store, you'll need to sign it with a key. Google Play uses the app's signature to verify updates and maintain a consistent identity for the app.

Signing Process: The process of signing an APK involves running the APKSigner tool with the appropriate command-line arguments, specifying the input APK file, the signing key, and the output file. APKSigner handles the signing and generates a signed APK.

Files that can be signed with Apksigner and PKCS11

- .aab (Android App Bundle)
- .apk (Android Application Package)

Installation of Apksigner

To download the Android SDK and install Apksigner, follow these steps:

1. Download Android Studio from the official website.
2. Run the android-studio file that was downloaded.
3. Follow the steps in the Android Studio Setup wizard to complete the installation.
4. Launch Android Studio and complete the setup wizard.

Apksigner should now be available in the file path:

For Windows: `C:\Users\<<username>\AppData\Local\Android\Sdk\build-tools\33.0.2\lib`

Setting PATH Environment Variables

Operating systems use the environment variable called PATH to locate executable files on your system.

To ensure that the CLI can reference Apksigner, set the PATH environment variable as follows:

Windows

1. To set the path to your signing tools via the command line, run the following command:

```
set PATH=%path%;<path to Apksigner>
```

Example:

```
set PATH=%path%;C:\Users\<<username>\AppData\Local\Android\Sdk\build-tools\33.0.2\lib
```

2. To set the path to your signing tools for your system or account, follow these steps:
 - a. Search for "environment variables" in the Windows start menu.
 - b. Select "Edit environment variables for your account" or "Edit system environment variables."
 - c. Double-click on the "Path" variable.
 - d. Click "New."
 - e. Select "Browse" and choose the path to the signing tool.
 - f. Click "OK" to save the path.
 - g. Click "OK" again to close the dialog.

Linux

1. To set the path to your signing tools via the command line, open the Terminal application and open the `~/.profile` file in an editor:

```
nano ~/.profile
```

2. Add the following export definition for the PATH:

```
export PATH=<Path to Apksigner>
```

Example: `export PATH=/path/to/Apksigner`

3. Press CTRL+X to exit, press Y to save, and press Enter to keep the same file name.

4. Execute the new .profile by restarting the Terminal or using the command:

```
source ~/.profile
```

Signing with Apksigner

To sign an individual APK file using Apksigner, use the following command:

```
$ANDROID_HOME/build-tools/31.0.0/apksigner sign --provider-class sun.security.pkcs11.SunPKCS11 --provider-arg <your_pkcs11.cfg_file> --ks NONE
--ks-type PKCS11 --ks-pass pass:<anything> --ks-key-alias <keypair_alias> --in <unsigned.apk> --out <signed.apk> (should test)
```

Verifying the Signature with Apksigner

To verify the signature on an individual APK file using Apksigner, use the following command:

```
$ANDROID_HOME/build-tools/31.0.0/apksigner verify -verbose <signed.apk> (should test)
```



Note: Kindly replace <your_pkcs11.cfg_file>, <anything>, <keypair_alias>, <unsigned.apk>, and <signed.apk> with your actual values and file paths.

JSign

Jsign is a Java implementation of Microsoft Authenticode that offers platform-independent signing of executable files for Windows, including various file types such as .appx, .exe, .msi, and more. It serves as an alternative to native signing tools like SignTool on Windows or Mono development tools on Unix systems.

- [Sign with Jsign](#)
- [Installation of Jsign](#)
- [Setting PATH Environment Variables](#)
- [Signing with Jsign](#)

Sign with Jsign

Jsign can be used to sign the following file types:

.appx, .appxbundle, .arx, .cab, .cat, .cbx, .cpl, .crx, .dbx, .deploy, .dll, .drx, .efi, .exe, .js, .msi, .msix, .msixbundle, .msm, .msp, .ocx, .ps1, .psm1, .stl, .sys, .vbs, .vxd, .wsf, .xap, .xls, .xlsx, .xsn

Installation of Jsign

Windows

1. Download **jsign-5.0.jar** from GitHub.
2. Move the folder to the location of your choice.

Linux (Debian/Ubuntu)

1. Download **jsign_5.0_all.deb** from GitHub.
2. Move the folder to the location of your choice.

Alternatively, you can install Jsign using the command:

```
curl -fSsL https://github.com/ebourg/jsign/releases/download/3.1/jsign_3.1_all.deb -o jsign_3.1_all.debsudo dpkg --install jsign_3.1_all.deb
```

Linux (Redhat/Fedora/CentOS)

1. Download **jsign-5.0-1.noarch.rpm** from GitHub.
2. Move the folder to the location of your choice.

Alternatively, you can install Jsign using the command:

```
curl -fSsL https://github.com/ebourg/jsign/releases/download/5.0/jsign-5.0-1.noarch.rpm
```

Setting PATH Environment Variables

Operating systems use the environment variable PATH to locate executable files. Set the PATH environment variable to include the path to Jsign to ensure that the CLI can reference it.

Windows

1. To set the path to your signing tools via the command line, run:

```
set PATH=%path%;<path to signing tool folder>
```

Example:

```
set PATH=%path%;C:\path\to\Jsign
```

- To set the path to your signing tools for your system or account:
 - Search for "environment variables" in the Windows start menu.
 - Select "Edit environment variables for your account" or "Edit system environment variables."
 - Double-click on the "Path" variable.
 - Click "New."
 - Select "Browse."
 - Choose the path to the signing tool.
 - Click "OK" to save the path.
 - Click "OK" again to close the dialog.

Linux

- To set the path to your signing tools via the command line, open the Terminal application and edit the `~/.profile` file:

```
nano ~/.profile
```

- Add the export definition for the PATH:

```
export PATH=<Path to Jsign>
```

Example:

```
export PATH=/path/to/Jsign
```

- Save and exit the editor (CTRL+X, Y, Enter).
- Execute the new `.profile` by restarting the terminal or using:

```
source ~/.profile
```

Signing with Jsign

To sign with Jsign, use the command:

```
java -jar <path to jsign> --keystore pkcs11.cfg --storepass changeit --storetype PKCS11 --alias <keypair alias> <unsigned file>
```

Alternative Sign Command (Linux Only):

```
jsign --keystore pkcs11properties.cfg --storepass NONE --storetype PKCS11 --alias <keypair alias> <unsigned file>
```



Note: Kindly replace <path to jsign>, <keypair alias>, and <unsigned file> with your actual values and file paths.

Chapter 2: SIGN+ Admin Guide

- [Certificate Authority](#)
- [Certificate Group](#)
- [CA Policy](#)
- [Signing Policy](#)
- [Sign Logs](#)
- [Password Vault](#)
- [Configuring Certificate Attributes and Tags](#)
- [Configuring Certificate Profiles](#)
- [Expired Certificates](#)
- [History of Certificates](#)
- [Job Scheduler](#)
- [Email Settings](#)

Certificate Authority

- [Configuring CA Settings](#)

Configuring CA Settings

- [Amazon and Amazon Private CA](#)
- [Custom CA](#)
- [DigiCert CA](#)
- [DigiCert MPKI](#)
- [EJBCA CA](#)
- [Entrust CA](#)
- [Entrust MPKI](#)
- [GlobalSign MSSL CA](#)
- [GlobalSign SSL CA](#)
- [GlobalSign Atlas CA](#)
- [GoDaddy CA](#)
- [Google CA](#)

- [HashiCorp Vault CA](#)
- [HydrantID CA](#)
- [InCommon CA](#)
- [Let's Encrypt CA](#)
- [Microsoft Enterprise CA](#)
- [Microsoft Standalone CA](#)
- [Nexus CA](#)
- [Sectigo CA](#)
- [Symantec CA](#)
- [Trustwave CA](#)

Amazon and Amazon Private CA

- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Amazon CA](#)
- [Configuring Amazon Private CA](#)
- [Validating Amazon](#)

Before you Begin

The prerequisites for configuring Amazon CA or Amazon Private CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- An Amazon account for a user having necessary access for enrolling the certificates and other CLM operations.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.
- Policy JSON for AWS Ec2 Instance Certificate Management.
- Prerequisite for Amazon CA:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ssm:SendCommand",
```

```

"ssm:DescribeDocument",
"ec2:DescribeInstances",
"ec2:DescribeRegions",
"s3:ListBucket",
"ssm:CreateDocument",
"ssm:GetCommandInvocation",
"s3:GetObject",
"s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
"ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation",
"ssm:GetDocument",
"s3:DeleteObject",
"s3:GetBucketLocation"
],
"Resource": "*"
}
]
}

```

Policy JSON for Certificate Management in AWS Classic and Application LoadBalancers:

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "iam:GetServerCertificate",
        "elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers",
        "elasticloadbalancing:ModifyListener",
        "elasticloadbalancing:DescribeListeners",
        "acm:GetCertificate",
        "ec2:DescribeRegions",
        "elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTargetHealth",
        "acm:ImportCertificate",
        "elasticloadbalancing:SetLoadBalancerListenerSSLCertificate",
        "iam:UploadServerCertificate"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}

```

```
}

```

```
]

```

```
}

```

Policy JSON for Certificate Management in AWS Cloudfront:

```
{

```

```
"Version": "2012-10-17",

```

```
"Statement": [

```

```
{

```

```
"Sid": "VisualEditor0",

```

```
"Effect": "Allow",

```

```
"Action": [

```

```
"ec2:DescribeRegions",

```

```
"cloudfront:ListDistributions",

```

```
"cloudfront:UpdateDistribution",

```

```
"cloudfront:GetDistributionConfig"

```

```
],

```

```
"Resource": "*"

```

```
}

```

```
]

```

```
}

```

Policy JSON for IAM Certificate Management:

```
{

```

```
"Version": "2012-10-17",

```

```
"Statement": [

```

```
{

```

```
"Sid": "VisualEditor0",

```

```
"Effect": "Allow",

```

```
"Action": [

```

```
"iam:GetServerCertificate",

```

```
"iam:UpdateServerCertificate",

```

```
"iam:ListServerCertificates",

```

```
"ec2:DescribeRegions",

```

```
"iam:UploadServerCertificate"

```

```
],

```

```
"Resource": "*"

```

```
}

```

```
]

```

```
}
Policy JSON for ACM Certificate Management:
```

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "acm:DescribeCertificate",
        "acm:RequestCertificate",
        "acm:GetCertificate",
        "ec2:DescribeRegions",
        "acm:ListCertificates",
        "acm:ImportCertificate"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

Prerequisite for Amazon Private CA.

Policies and Permissions required for AWS IAM User:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "s3:PutObject",
        "s3:GetObjectAcl",
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObjectAcl"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:s3:::<bucketname>",
        "arn:aws:s3:::<bucketname>/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

```

]
},
{
  "Sid": "VisualEditor1",
  "Effect": "Allow",
  "Action": [
    "acm-pca:GetCertificate",
    "ec2:DescribeRegions",
    "acm-pca:GetCertificateAuthorityCertificate",
    "acm-pca:RevokeCertificate",
    "acm:RenewCertificate",
    "acm-pca:ListCertificateAuthorities",
    "acm-pca:DescribeCertificateAuthorityAuditReport",
    "acm-pca:CreateCertificateAuthorityAuditReport",
    "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
    "acm:DescribeCertificate",
    "acm-pca:IssueCertificate",
    "acm:RequestCertificate",
    "acm:GetCertificate",
    "acm:ListCertificates",
    "acm-pca:DescribeCertificateAuthority"
  ],
  "Resource": "*"
}
]

```

AWS Simple Storage Service (S3) Bucket Policy for parsing Audit log:

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "acm-pca.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": [
        "s3:PutObject",
        "s3:PutObjectAcl",


```

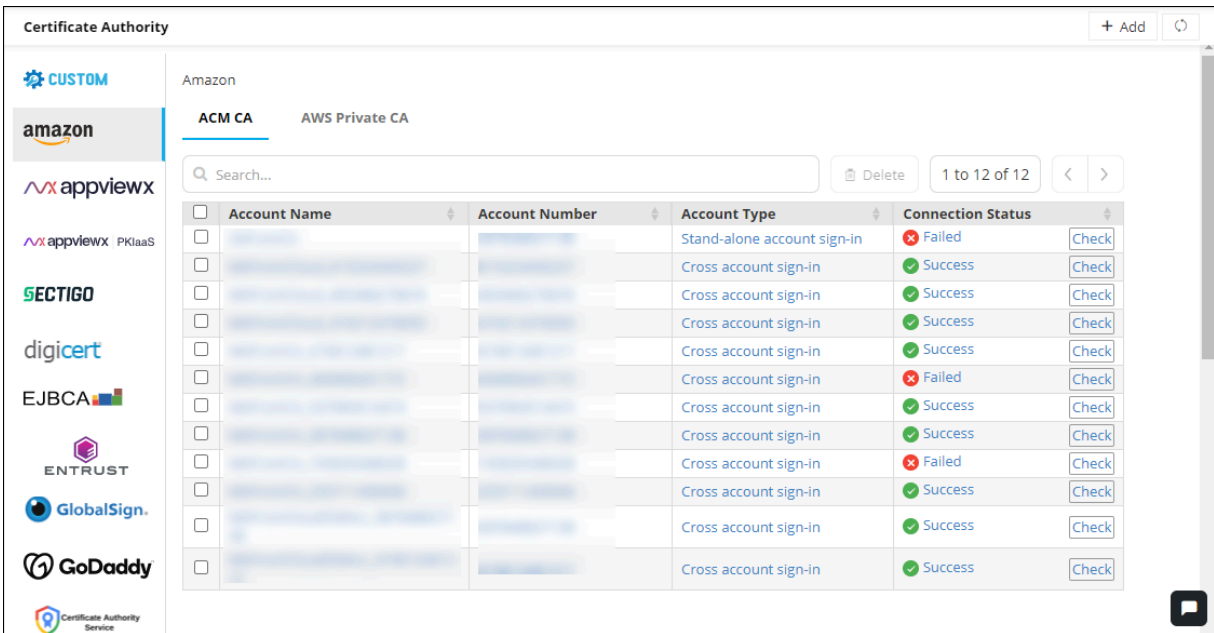
```

"s3:GetBucketAcl",
"s3:GetBucketLocation"
],
"Resource": [
"arn:aws:s3:::bucket_name/*",
"arn:aws:s3:::bucket_name"
]
}
]
}

```

Configuring Amazon CA

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **Amazon**.
The **Amazon** home page is displayed.



The screenshot shows the 'Certificate Authority' management interface. The 'amazon' logo is selected in the sidebar. The main content area shows the 'ACM CA' configuration page. A table lists various accounts with their connection statuses. The table has the following columns: Account Name, Account Number, Account Type, and Connection Status. The 'Connection Status' column includes a status indicator (green checkmark for Success, red X for Failed) and a 'Check' button.

Account Name	Account Number	Account Type	Connection Status
		Stand-alone account sign-in	Failed
		Cross account sign-in	Success
		Cross account sign-in	Success
		Cross account sign-in	Success
		Cross account sign-in	Success
		Cross account sign-in	Failed
		Cross account sign-in	Success
		Cross account sign-in	Success
		Cross account sign-in	Success
		Cross account sign-in	Success
		Cross account sign-in	Success
		Cross account sign-in	Success

3. To configure Amazon CA, click **ACM CA** from the home page.
4. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.



Note: The **Configure Now** option is displayed if you are configuring a CA for the first time.

The **Amazon** configuration page is displayed.

Certificate Authority

CUSTOM

amazon

appviewx

appviewx PKIaaS

SECTIGO

digicert

EJBCA

ENTRUST

GlobalSign

GoDaddy

Certificate Authority Service

< Amazon

Basic Configuration Route53 Zone

General Information

* Account Type: ⓘ

* Account Name: ⓘ

* Account Number: ⓘ

Account Description:

* Purpose/Usage: ⓘ

Proxy Required: ⓘ

* Default Region: ⓘ

* Data Center: ⓘ

5. Enter/Select the following details in the **General Information** section:


General Information - Field Description Table


Fields	Description
* Account Type	From the dropdown list, select one of the following account types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standalone (Traditional access key- and secret key-based communication) • Cross or Federated (Authentication using assume role)
* Account Name	Unique name for the certificate authority (CA) account represented during certificate enrollment and policy creation
* Account Number	Valid AWS account number

Fields	Description
Account Description	Additional information related to the CA account being configured
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. The available options are, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server • Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
*Default Region	Default region for API communication
*Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Enter/Select the following **Credentials**-related information:



Credentials - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
Credential type*	From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the credential type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual Entry: Manually enter the access and secret key for the customer's AWS account)
Access key*	Enter the access key for the customer's AWS account. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry. </div>
Secret key*	Enter the secret key for the customer's AWS account.

Fields	Description
	 Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry .
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	



7. Enter/Select the following details in the **Discover resources** section:

Discover Resources - Field Description Table

Fields	Description						
Role ARN for Resource Discovery*	 Note: This field is displayed only when Account Type is Cross or Federated . <p>To let the master account assume role for the child account (get temporary privileges to discover resources from the child account), configure the role ARN for resource discovery:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click . Enter the following details: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Fields</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Role Session name</td> <td> Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session. Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons. </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Duration Seconds</td> <td>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Fields	Description	Role Session name	Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session. Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.	Duration Seconds	Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the
Fields	Description						
Role Session name	Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session. Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.						
Duration Seconds	Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the						


Fields	Description	
	Fields	Description
		<p>credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum: 900 seconds (15 minutes) • Maximum: 129,600 seconds (36 hours) <p>Default: 3600 seconds (1 hour)</p>
	External Id	<p>External Id is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.</p>
	Source Identity	<p>The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the AssumeRole operation.</p>
Session Tags	<p>Session Tags are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.</p>	

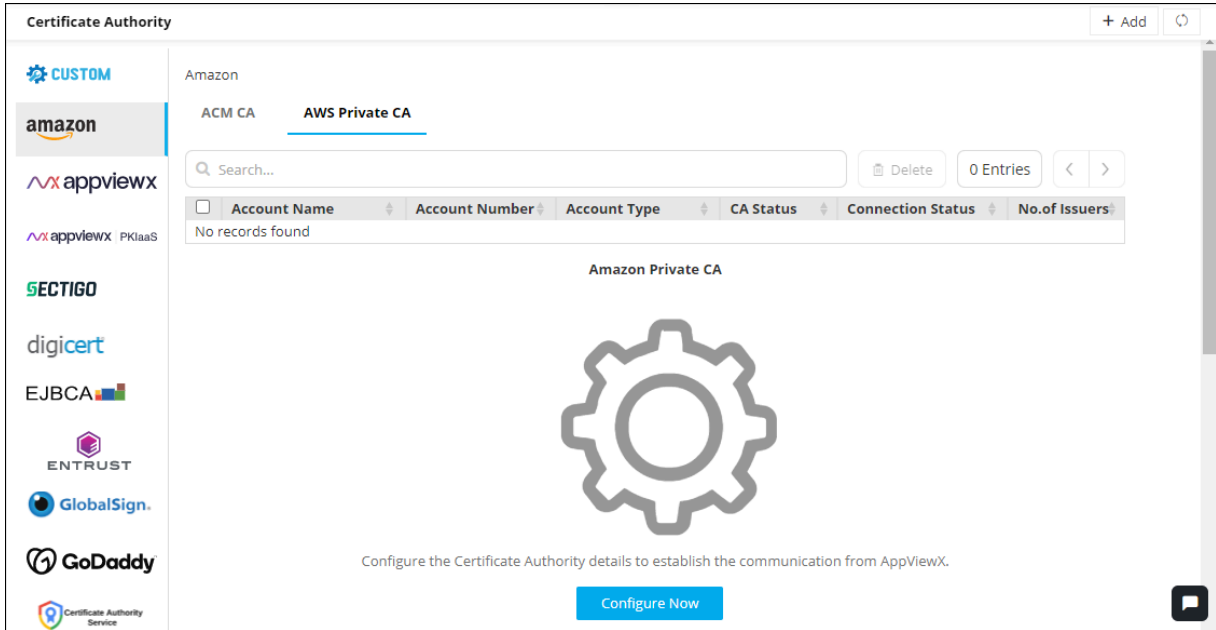
Fields	Description	
		<p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. ii. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. iii. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p>
Service Region*	<p>To select a service region:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. To fetch the service regions for the account information provided, click Fetch Region. <p>The retrieved service regions are populated in the Select the Region(s) dropdown list.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> b. From the Select the Region(s) dropdown list, select the required service region. 	
Discover Certificate	<p>To enable instant certificate discovery at the time of device addition, select this checkbox.</p>	
Cert Sync*	<p>Select from one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Managed: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory. Users with the relevant permissions can then perform the required certificate-related actions. • Monitored: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates 	

Fields	Description
	<p>will be added to the inventory where the users will be allowed to only view the certificates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ignored: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account but certificate discovery will be disabled.
Auto Sync	<p>To enable/disable automatic schedule-based synchronization:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> For Auto Sync, select the Yes checkbox. For Schedule based discovery, use the two dropdown lists to select a duration. For example, to schedule the auto sync after every 2 days, from the first dropdown list, select 2 and from the second dropdown list, select Days. <p>By default, the auto sync is set to 1 Hours.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> Note: The Schedule based discovery dropdown lists are displayed only when Auto Sync is enabled.</p> </div>
Route53 Zone Auto Approval	<p>To support DNS validation as an automatic process, enable this toggle.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #FFC000; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #FFF2CC;"> <p> Important: If Route53 has been configured for any of the older Amazon Public CAs, ensure that, after migration, the zones are manually updated.</p> </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

8. Click **Save**.

Configuring Amazon Private CA


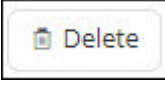

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
- From the displayed CA, Select **Amazon**.
The **Amazon** home page is displayed.
- To configure the Amazon Private CA, click **AWS Private CA**.

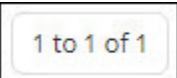


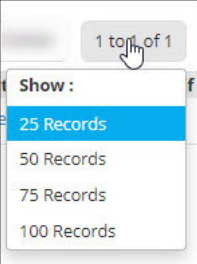





The **Amazon** home page is updated to display the inventory grid as shown in the image. In the inventory grid for the Amazon Private CA, master and child account details are logged as separate entries, instead of having just one master entry.

Fields in the inventory grid are explained in the table below:

AWS Private CA - Screen Description Table

Fields	Description
Search	Use the Search field to search for accounts, by entering the value of one of the details listed in the inventory grid.
	<p>To delete one or more accounts:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the inventory grid, select the checkbox corresponding to the account(s) you want to delete. Click . <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Tip: To delete all accounts listed in the inventory grid, select the checkbox in the grid header.</p> </div>

Fields	Description
	<p>To set the number of records that should be displayed on one page:</p>  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click . From the Show menu displayed, select the required value. 
	<p>If the inventory grid spans more than one page, use this control to navigate the pages, one page at a time.</p>
<p>Account Name</p>	<p>This is the unique name for the Certificate Authority (CA) account entered at the time of account creation.</p>
<p>Account Number</p>	<p>AWS account number</p>
<p>Account Type</p>	<p>Multi account: Indicates that the account is a cross account</p> <p>Single account: Indicates that the account is a standalone account</p>
<p>CA Status</p>	<p>For an account, after all configuration details for Amazon Private CA are entered, you will be required to click the Fetch issuer and save button to sync and discover the issuers and the respective certificates for that account.</p> <p>The CA Status field shows the current status of this sync and discovery process.</p> <p>Possible values for this field are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Completed • In progress

Fields	Description
	 Note: An account entry in the grid will be disabled till the CA Status is In progress .
Connection Status	To validate if connection has been established with the CA, click Check . If a connection has been established, this field is updated to display Success or Failure .
No. of Issuers	This field displays the number of issuers associated with the account.  Note: For a master account, this field will show the number of issuers associated with only the master account. The value does not include the number of issuers associated with the child account.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively. The **Amazon** page is updated to display fields for entering the CA configuration-related information.

Certificate Authority

CUSTOM

amazon

appviewx

appviewx PKIaaS

SECTIGO

digicert

EJBCA

ENTRUST

GlobalSign

GoDaddy

Certificate Authority Service

HashiCorp Vault

< Amazon

Basic Information

* Account Type: Standalone

* Account Name:

* Account Number:

Account Description:

* Purpose/Usage: Server

Proxy Required:

* Default Region: US East (N. Virginia)

* Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent): absecon

Credentials

* Credential Type: Manual Entry

Fetch issuer and save Cancel

5. On this screen, enter the following **Basic Information**:


Basic Information - Field Description Table



Fields	Description
Account type*	From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the customer's AWS account type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standalone: The user account and the resources are available in the same account. • Cross or Federated: Resources are available across multiple accounts and users are given role-based access.
Account name*	Enter a unique name for the Certificate Authority (CA) account that will be used during certificate enrollment and policy creation.
Account number*	Enter the customer's AWS account number.
Account Description	Enter any additional details related to the account, if required.
Purpose/Usage*	From the dropdown list, select the purpose of the certificate that can be requested using this account.

Fields	Description
Proxy Required	To allow all communication to the Certificate Authority (CA) to use the proxy details (provided in general settings; refer the CLMaaS Platform User Guide for more details), select this checkbox.
Default Region*	From the dropdown list, select the default region for API communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA Agent)	From the dropdown list, select the data center that will be used to establish communication with the Certificate Authority (CA)
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Enter the following **Credentials**-related information:



Credentials - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
Credential type*	From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the credential type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual Entry: Manually enter the access and secret key for the customer's AWS account)
Access key*	Enter the access key ID for the customer's AWS account. The access key and the secret access key (entered in the following field) are used together to authenticate requests. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry. </div>
Secret key*	Enter the secret access key ID for the customer's AWS account. The access key (entered in the previous field) and the secret access key are used together to authenticate requests.

Fields	Description
	 Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry .
Credential name*	<p>If the customer's AWS credentials are stored in CyberArk, from the dropdown list, select the CyberArk credential name.</p>  Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Credential List - CyberArk .
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	




7. In the **Discover resources** section, enter the following details:

Discover Resources - Field Description Table

Fields	Description				
Role ARN for Resource Discovery*	 Note: This field is displayed only when Account Type is Cross or Federated . <p>To let the master account assume role for the child account (get temporary privileges to discover resources from the child account), configure the role ARN for resource discovery:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click . Enter the following details: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Fields</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Role Session name</td> <td> <p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Fields	Description	Role Session name	<p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same</p>
Fields	Description				
Role Session name	<p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same</p>				

Fields	Description	
	Fields	Description
		rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.
	Duration Seconds	<p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum: 900 seconds (15 minutes) • Maximum: 129,600 seconds (36 hours) <p>Default: 3600 seconds (1 hour)</p>
	External Id	External Id is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.
	Source Identity	The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the AssumeRole operation.
	Session Tags	Session Tags are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.

Fields	Description	
		<p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. ii. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. iii. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p>
Service Region*	<p>Service regions are regions that are supported by the selected service.</p> <p>To select a service region:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. To fetch the service regions for the account information provided, click Fetch Region.The retrieved service regions are populated in the Select the Region(s) dropdown list. b. From the Select the Region(s) dropdown list, select the required service region. 	
CA Operation Mode*	<p>From the following options, select one/both operation mode(s) for discovering all the certificates enrolled by the Private Certificate Authority:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ACM Private CA • AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) 	

Fields	Description						
S3 Bucket*	<div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when the ACM Private CA operation mode is selected. </div> <p>Enter the S3 bucket name.</p>						
Role ARN for S3 Bucket	<div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when the ACM Private CA operation mode is selected for a Cross or Federated account. </div> <p>a. Click .</p> <p>The ARN Advanced Settings action pane is displayed.</p> <p>b. In the ARN Advanced Settings action pane, enter the following details:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Fields</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Role Session name*</td> <td> <p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Duration Seconds</td> <td> <p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Fields	Description	Role Session name*	<p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p>	Duration Seconds	<p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p>
Fields	Description						
Role Session name*	<p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p>						
Duration Seconds	<p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p>						

Fields	Description	
	Fields	Description
		Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum: 900 seconds (15 minutes) • Maximum: 129,600 seconds (36 hours) Default: 3600 seconds (1 hour)
	External Id	External Id is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.
	Source Identity	The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the AssumeRole operation.
Session Tags	Session Tags are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.	

Fields	Description					
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Fields</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td> <p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. ii. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. iii. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Fields	Description		<p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. ii. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. iii. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p>	
Fields	Description					
	<p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. ii. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. iii. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p>					
Discover Certificate	To enable instant certificate discovery at the time of device addition, select this checkbox.					
CA Sync*	<p>Select from one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Managed: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory. Users with the relevant permissions can then perform the required certificate-related actions. • Monitored: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory where the users will be allowed to only view the certificates. • Ignored: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account but certificate discovery will be disabled. 					


Fields	Description
Auto Sync	<p>To enable/disable automatic synchronization, use the Auto Sync key.</p> <p>If Auto Sync is enabled, to set the frequency of the schedule-based sync:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the first dropdown list, select the interval between two schedule-based syncs. From the second dropdown, select a unit for the interval (Hours/Days). <p>For example, to set the frequency of the schedule-based sync to every 2 hours, from the first dropdown list, select 2 and from the second dropdown list, select Hours.</p>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

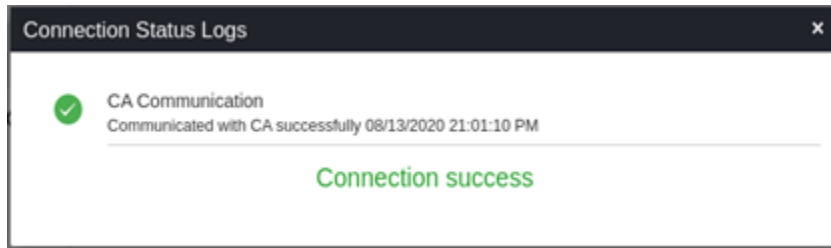
8. Click **Fetch issuer and save**.

- AppViewX will now discover all the Private CA Certificate Authorities across the selected region(s).
- The inventory grid on the Amazon CA home page will be populated with the properties and details retrieved from this discovery.

Validating Amazon

Once the Amazon settings are added, you need to validate the connection between AppViewX and Amazon, to make sure that the connection is properly configured.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **Amazon**.
The **Amazon** home page is displayed.
3. On the **Amazon** home page, select **Amazon** or **Amazon Private CA**.
4. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.



The CA communication will be validated and the **connection status** will be displayed as either **Connection success** or **Failure**.

Custom CA


- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Custom CA](#)

Before you Begin

The prerequisites for configuring Custom CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- A logo to use it for the custom CA.
- An optional CA certificate and key to be used as a root certificate.

Configuring Custom CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **Custom**.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **Custom** home page is displayed.

Create Custom CA

General Information

You can white label your organization's internal CA. Custom CA will sign digital certificates used for internal purposes.

* Custom CA Name i

* Upload Custom CA Logo i

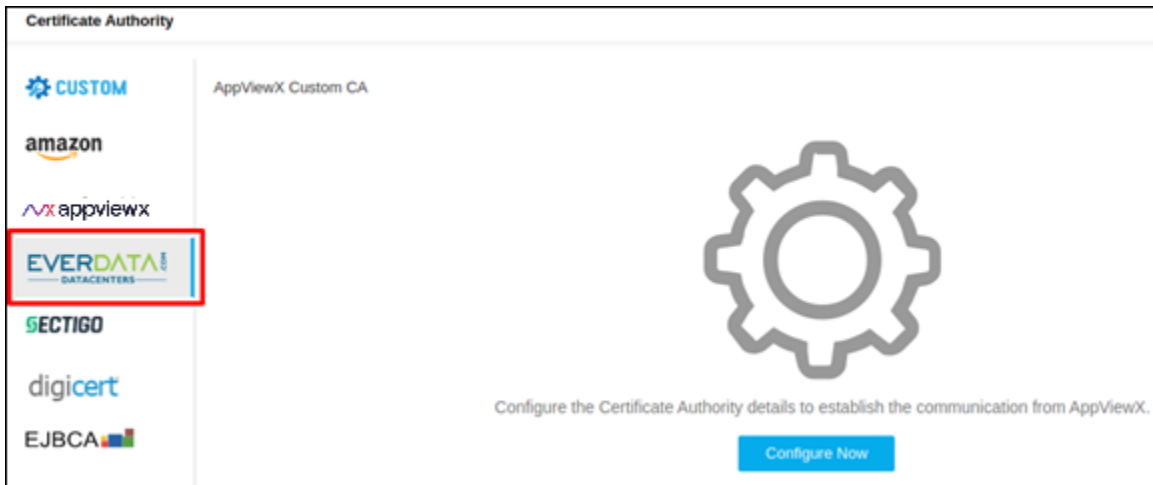
Custom CA Certificate i

4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

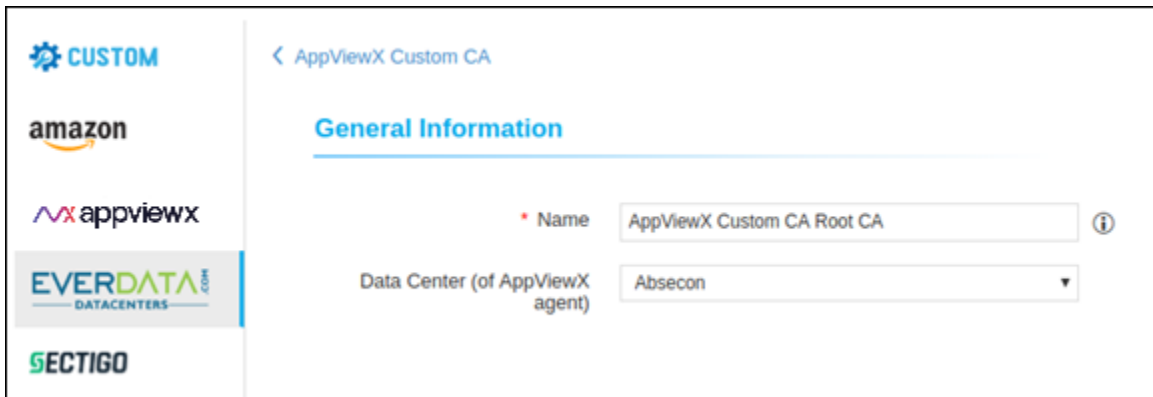
General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Custom CA Name	<p>A unique name to identify the CA name.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: No special characters allowed.</p> </div>
*Upload Custom CA Logo	<p>Upload a logo for the custom CA. This logo will appear in the product representing the custom CA.</p>
Custom CA Certificate	<p>Upload a certificate for the custom CA. This certificate will become the root certificate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: The <code><.pfx></code> and <code><.p12></code> are certificate types are supported.</p> </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Once the logo and certificate are uploaded, the entered CA will appear in the CA list with the logo presented.




6. Once the logo is added, users can click **Configure Now** to input the CA details.
7. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:



Fields	Description
*Name	Client authentication certificate for API communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	


8. Update the following details in the **ROOT CSR parameters** section as described in the table:


Root CSR - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
Common Name	The common name of the root certificate. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. • Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.) </div>
Algorithm	Type of the root certificate.
Hash Function	The hash function for the root certificate.
Organization Unit	Name of the Organisation unit.
Key Length	Key length for the root certificate.
Organization	Organization attribute for the root certificate.
Locality	Locality attribute for the root certificate.
State or Province	State attribute for the root certificate.
Country	Country attribute for the root certificate.
Email Address	Email address for the root certificate.
*: Mandatory fields	

9. Update the following details in the **Root Validity** section as described in the table.

Root Validity

* Start Date 

* End Date 

Fields	Description
* Start Date	Start date of the certificate issuance.
* End Date	End date of the certificate issuance.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

10. Click **Save**.

Once the setting is saved, the user will be directed to the root certificate submission holistic view as below.



11. Users can submit and fetch the root certificate.

12. On the CA setting page user can see the status of the created setting as shown below.

Settings Name	CA Common Name	Immediate Parent Common Name	Purpose/Usage	Status
AppViewX Custom CA Root CA	AppViewX Root CA		Server,Client,Code Signing	Not-generated

DigiCert CA


- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring DigiCert](#)
- [Validating DigiCert](#)

Before you begin


The prerequisites for configuring DigiCert CA account in AppViewX are as follows:


- A DigiCert CertCentral Account with **Administrator** role Access.
- An **API Key** configured in DigiCert with required permissions to make API Requests from AppViewX.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.


Configuring DigiCert


1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **DigiCert**.
The **DigiCert** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **DigiCert** configuration page is displayed.


Certificate Authority


 CUSTOM


 amazon


 appviewx


 appviewx PKIaaS


 SECTIGO

 digicert

 EJBCA

 ENTRUST


 GlobalSign.

 GoDaddy


< DigiCert

General Information


* CA Account name




* Purpose/Usage



Proxy Required




Data Center
(AppViewX's CA agent)




CA Configuration


* Base URL



* Credential Type



Account ID



Save

Cancel

Fetch Custom Attributes

4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

Copyright © 2024 AppViewX, Inc. All Rights Reserved.


119



General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example: Server, Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Digicert CA APIs for Certificate Management:

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the Digicert CA instance. For example, <https://www.digicert.com>  Note: vendorSpecificSettings.url - invalid URL.
*Credential Type	Select the type of credential as desired from the dropdown list. The available options are, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual EntryCredential • List - CyberArk.
*Credential List	Select the required credential from the dropdown list.

Fields	Description
	<div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  Note: This field will be enabled if the Credential Type is selected as Credential List - CyberArk. </div>
Account ID	Account id details of Digicert CA Account, which can be found under account manager details in Digicert CertCentral Account.
*API Key	API key specific to the CA account. This API key should have required permission to make API Calls. Space is not allowed.
Auto Approve	Enable the Auto Approve option if all CLM requests from AppViewX do not need to be approved from Digicert CA Account.
<p><i>*: Mandatory fields</i></p> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  Note: Auto approval checkbox is optional and its features work only for one-step certificate requests configured in the Digicert Cert Central Account. </div>	


6. Select **Fetch Divisions and Certificate Types**.

The Division and Certificate types available in the DigiCert CA account will be fetched.

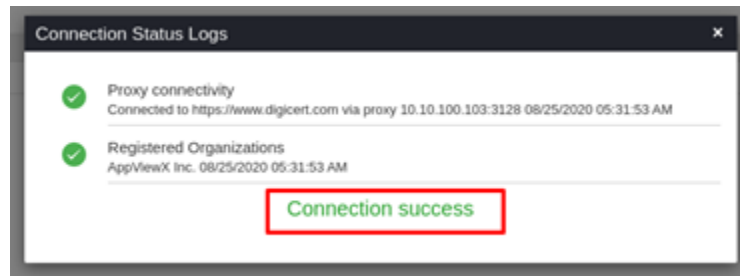
7. Click **Save**.

Validating Digicert

Once the Digicert settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Digicert is configured properly.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **Digicert**.
The **Digicert** home page is displayed.
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



DigiCert MPKI


- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring DigiCert MPKI](#)
- [Validating DigiCert MPKI Connection](#)

Before You Begin

The prerequisites for configuring a DigiCert MPKI CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- A DigiCert MPKI Account with **Administrator** role Access.
- An **API Key** configured in DigiCert MPKI with required permissions to make API Requests from AppViewX.
- The AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.

Configuring DigiCert MPKI

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **DigiCert**.
The **DigiCert** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **DigiCert MPKI** tab.
4. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **DigiCert MPKI** configuration page is displayed.

[← DigiCert MPKI](#)

General Information

* CA Account name ⓘ

* Purpose/Usage None Selected ▼ ⓘ

Proxy Required ⓘ

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) absecon ▼ ⓘ

CA Configuration

* Base URL ⓘ

Allow Seat ID during enrollment

* Seat ID ⓘ

Save
Cancel

5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.


General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example: Server, Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.

Fields	Description
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Digicert CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
* Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the Digicert CA instance. For example, <https://www.digicert.com>
* Seat ID	Enter the unique seat id for discovering certificates.
* API Key	Enter the API key, which is generic across all CAs
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	
 Note: Auto approval checkbox is optional and features work only for one-step certificate requests configured in the DigiCert Central Account.	

7. Select **Fetch Divisions and Certificate Types**.

The Division and Certificate types available in the Digicert CA account will be fetched and listed for the specific API key user in the table as shown below.


	End Entity Profile Names	Custom Attributes	Required	Default Value	Modifiable	Regex Pattern
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ecosystem_Code_Signing	country	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		locality	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		common_name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		state	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		postal_code	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ecosystem_Client	common_name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		otherNameUPN	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		san_ipAddress	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		mail_email	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		directory_name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ecosystem_Server	common_name	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		cert_org_unit	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		custom_encode_dnsName	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		custom_encode_dnsName_multi	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		san_ipAddress	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>

8. Click **Save**.

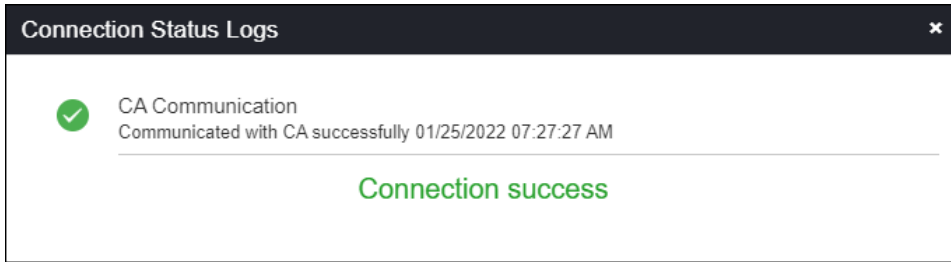
A pop-up message is displayed as <CA_name> Settings Added.

Validating DigiCert MPKI Connection

Once the DigiCert MPKI settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and DigiCert MPKI is configured properly.

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
- From the displayed CA, Select **DigiCert**.
The **DigiCert** home page is displayed.
- Click **DigiCert MPKI** from the left pane of the page.
The **DigiCert MPKI** home page is displayed.
- In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



EJBCA CA


- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring EJBCA](#)
- [Validating EJBCA](#)

Before you begin

The prerequisites for configuring the EJBCA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- An Ejbca client certificate for a user having the necessary access for enrolling the certificates and other CLM operations.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.

Configuring EJBCA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **EJBCA**.
The **EJBCA** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **Ejbca** configuration page is displayed.

< Ejbca

General Information

* CA Account name ⓘ

* Purpose/Usage ⓘ

Proxy Required ⓘ

Please contact support/admin to restart the AppViewX CA agent when proxy required is enabled/disabled or proxy settings in Menu >> Certificate >> Administration >> General Settings Proxy is modified

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) ⓘ

CA Configuration




4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/ Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. E.g. Server, Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field Description Table


Fields	Description
*Client Authentication	<p>Client authentication certificate for API communication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the valid password once the Authentication Details window is displayed. • Click OK. <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Must be a valid <code><.p12></code> or <code><.pfx></code> file. </div>
*URL	Ejbca URL
*Discover by expiry days	<p>To get all the certificates that are expired and valid for specified days.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Must be a number. </div>
End entity profile names	Required end entity profiles for CA setting.
Custom attributes	<p>Required custom attributes for the specific end entity profile.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Validation can be added by the user in the regex box. </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Validate and Fetch**.

The **End entity profiles** available for the CA account will be fetched along with the certificate profile from the **Certificate Authority**.

7. Update the following details in the **Certificate Attributes** section as described in the table:


Fields	Description
*End Entry Profile Names	Select the profile that is used in the certificate enrollment from the dropdown list.
Custom Attributes	Select the list attributes configured in CA to enroll certificates.

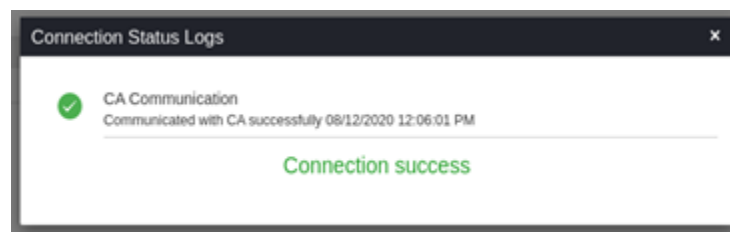
Fields	Description
<p>*: <i>Mandatory fields.</i></p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Custom attributes should be configured as exactly as it is available in the Ejbca portal.</p> </div>	

8. Click **Save**.

Validating EJBCA

Once the EJBCA settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and EJBCA is properly configured.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **EJBCA**.
The **EJBCA** home page is displayed.
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.
The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Entrust CA

- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring Entrust](#)
- [Validating Entrust CA](#)

Before You Begin

The prerequisites for configuring Entrust CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- An Entrust client authentication certificate and credentials–API username (username) and API key (password) having necessary access for CLM actions.


To get a private key + certificate that can be used to access to API. The general steps performed by a super admin are:

- Generate a new private TLS/SSL key and a CSR.
- Issue a certificate in the ECS account using the CSR. Client Authentication must be enabled in the certificate.
- Import the private key and certificate into the system that will be invoking the API.
- Test that TLS/SSL mutual authentication is successfully configured.

Refer chapter **Authentication** and section **TLS with client certificate authentication** in the [Entrust - Rest API Guide](#).

- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.

Configuring Entrust

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **Entrust**.
The **Entrust** home page is displayed. The Entrust tab is selected by default.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **Entrust** configuration page is displayed.

[← Entrust](#)

General Information

* CA Account name ⓘ

* Purpose/Usage None Selected ▼ ⓘ

Proxy Required ⓘ

Data Center
(AppViewX's CA agent) absecon ▼ ⓘ

CA Configuration

* Client Authentication filename.pkcs Upload ⓘ

* Base URL https://api.entrust.net/enterprise/v2 ⓘ

* User Name ⓘ

Save
Cancel
Fetch Custom Attributes

4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example: Server and Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.

Fields	Description
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Entrust CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
* Client Authentication	<p>The client authentication certificate from Entrust for API communication.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">  Note: Must be a valid <.p12> file. </div> <p>To generate an CSR within AppViewX refer to Generating a CSR and download the CSR. Further, upload the CSR to the Entrust homepage as described in section - XXXXX.</p>
* Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the Entrust CA instance. The value is https://api.entrust.net/enterprise/v2
User Name	Enter the API Username to communicate with the CA.
Password	Enter the API Password to communicate with the CA.
Auto Approve	Select the checkbox to avoid queuing of new certificates in the CA portal.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Update the following details in the **Advanced Settings** section as described in the table.

Advanced Settings - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
Poll after CSR Submission	A check box field when selected will fetch the certificated immediately after CSR Submission on enrollment, renew, and reissue of certificate with the retry count and retry frequency as described below.
* Retry Count	The number of times the polling will take place after CSR submission. Enter a value between 1 and 10.
* Retry Frequency	The duration of the polling. enter the value between 1 and 30seconds
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click **Fetch Custom Attributes**.

The attributes available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority along with the CA and profile names. A pop-up message is displayed as **CA and profiles fetched**.

8. Click **Save**.

The created Entrust configuration settings will be added. A pop-up message is displayed as **<CA_name> Settings Added**.

Validating Entrust CA

Once the Entrust settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Entrust is properly configured.

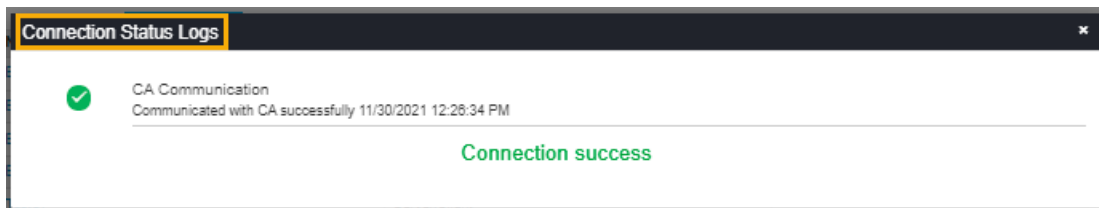
1. Go to  **(Menu) > SIGN+ > ADMINISTRATION > Certificate Authority**.

2. From the displayed CA, Select **Entrust**.

The **Entrust** home page is displayed.

3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Entrust MPKI


- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Entrust MPKI](#)
- [Validating Entrust MPKI](#)

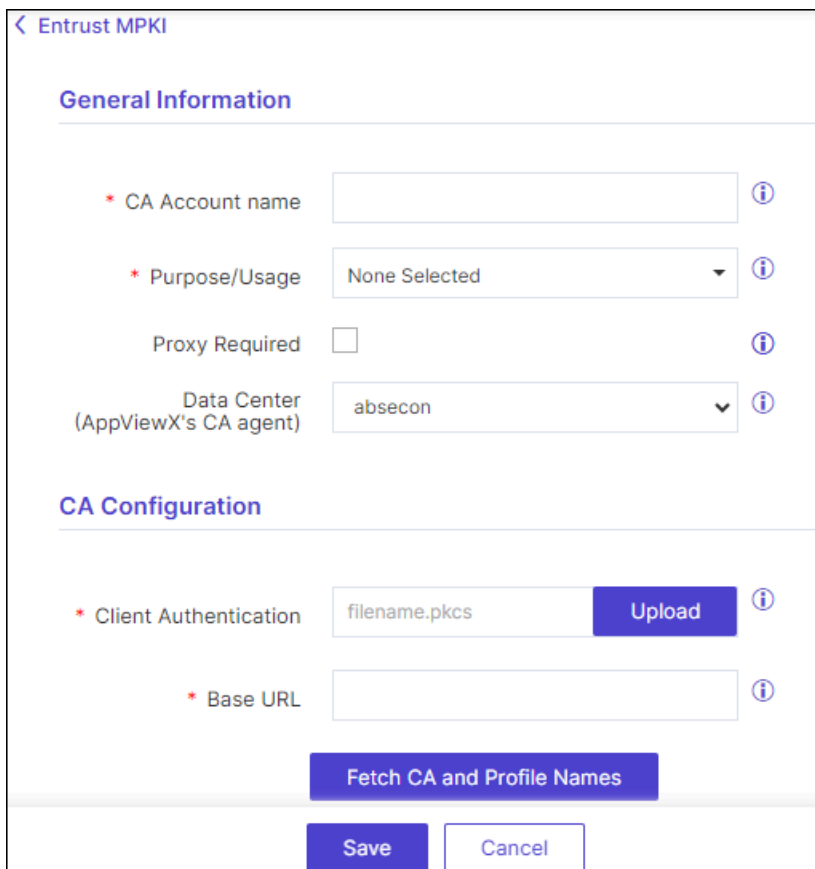
Before you begin

The prerequisites for configuring Entrust MPKI CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- An Entrust client authentication certificate and credentials having necessary access for CLM actions.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.

Configuring Entrust MPKI

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **Entrust**.
The **Entrust** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Entrust MPKI** tab.
4. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **Entrust MPKI** configuration page is displayed.



← Entrust MPKI

General Information

* CA Account name ⓘ

* Purpose/Usage ⓘ

Proxy Required ⓘ

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) ⓘ


CA Configuration

* Client Authentication ⓘ

* Base URL ⓘ


5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. </div>
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example: Server and Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Entrust MPKI CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Client Authentication	Client authentication certificate for API communication. <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Must be a valid <.p12> file. </div>
*Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the Entrust CA instance. Eg - https://api.entrust.net/enterprise/v2
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click **Fetch CA and Profile Names**.

The attributes available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority along with the CA and profile names. A pop-up message is displayed as **CA and profiles fetched**.

8. Click **Save**.

The created Entrust MPKI configuration settings will be added. A pop-up message is displayed as **<CA_name> Settings Added**.

Validating Entrust MPKI

Once the Entrust settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Entrust is properly configured.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.

2. From the displayed CA, Select **Entrust**.

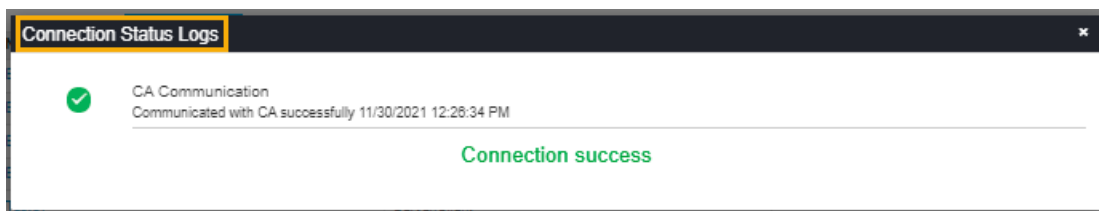
The **Entrust** home page is displayed.

3. Click **Entrust MPKI** from the left pane of the page.

The **Entrust MPKI** home page is displayed.

4. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



GlobalSign MSSL CA

- [Configuring GlobalSign MSSL](#)
- [Validating GlobalSign MSSL](#)
- [Limitations](#)

Configuring GlobalSign MSSL

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.

2. From the displayed CA, Select **GlobalSign**.

The **GlobalSign** home page is displayed.

3. Click the **GlobalSign MSSL** tab.

4. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively. The **GlobalSign MSSL** configuration page is displayed.

5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. No special characters other than ':', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, server and clients
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.

Fields	Description
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.






CA Configuration

- * SSL URL ⓘ
- * User Name ⓘ
- * Password ⓘ

Fields	Description
*SSL URL	Base URL of the SSL API
*User Name	Provide a username of the GCC to communicate with the CA.
*Password	Provide a password for the GCC to communicate with the CA.
*: Mandatory fields	

7. Once all the details are configured, click **Save**.

8. In GlobalSign MSSL, we can now fetch profiles and domains by clicking on the **Fetch Profiles and Domain** button.

CA Configuration

- * SSL URL ⓘ
- * User Name ⓘ
- * Password ⓘ

Domain name	Profile ID
No records found	


Update
Cancel
Fetch Profile and Domains

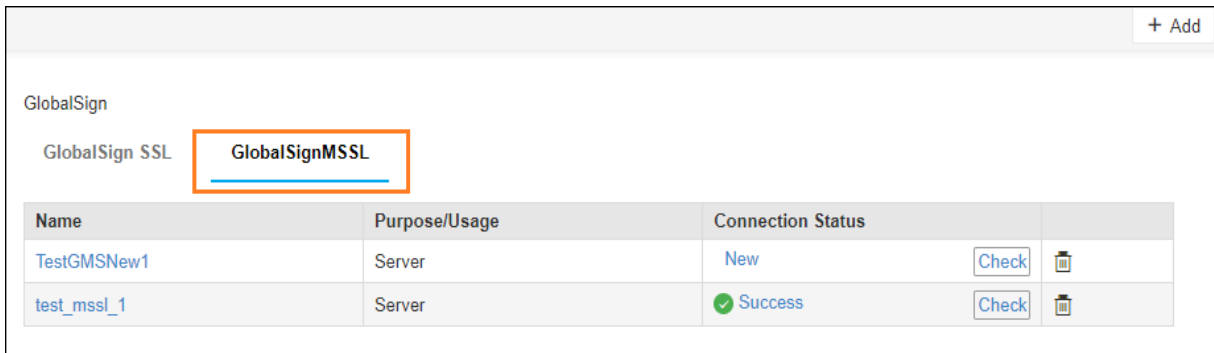




Note: The supported CSR key types are RSA **2048-8192**, ECC **P-256**, ECC **P-384** .

Validating GlobalSign MSSL

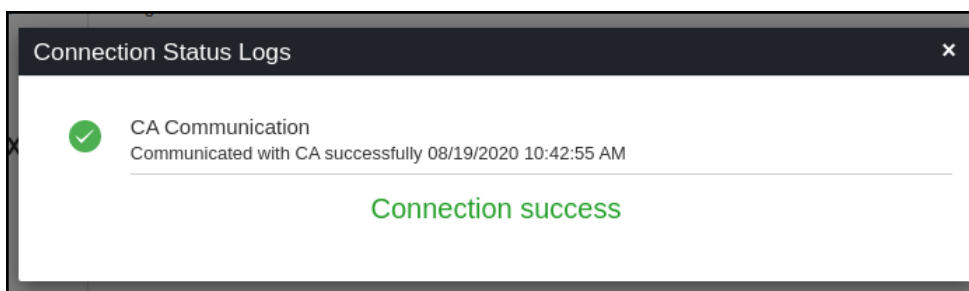
Once the GlobalSign MSSL settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GlobalSign MSSL is properly configured.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **GlobalSign**.
The **GlobalSign** home page is displayed.
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **GlobalSign MSSL** from the left pane of the page.
The **GlobalSign MSSL** home page is displayed.



Name	Purpose/Usage	Connection Status	
TestGMSNew1	Server	New	Check 
test_mssl_1	Server	Success	Check 

4. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
5. CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



Limitations

Case/ Ticket number	Fix Description
CA Setting Update	<p>Users need to click on the Cancel button once the MSSL domain/profile. ID details are fetched from the GlobalSign MSSL account.</p> <p>If the user clicks the Update button, MSSL domain/profile ID details will be removed from the associated policy. The steps to follow to update CA settings are as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the GlobalSign MSSL CA settings page, after adding/editing values, click the Update button. 2. Navigate back to updated CA settings and click the Fetch Profiles and Domain button. 3. Click the Cancel button instead of Update to bypass the existing issue.
Default CA policy mapping	<p>The default CA policy is defined with all available values selected and validity data is mapped based on commonly used validity. Hence, it will not have values equivalent to API documents or CA portals. This can be modified or updated in the application accordingly to the default CA policy if changes are required.</p>
Email Address	<p>The email address provided in the email address field on the enrollment page is not considered as the primary email value during CLM actions, instead, the email address field defined in the contact information of the logged-in user will be used. The help info message besides the Email address field on enroll/edit page is as – “If the user email address is configured, that will be used for GlobalSign CA approval actions. If the user email is not configured, then the email address provided in this field will be used” - the second part is not valid anymore.</p>

GlobalSign SSL CA

- [Configuring GlobalSign SSL](#)
- [Validating GlobalSign SSL](#)

Configuring GlobalSign SSL

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **GlobalSign**.

The **GlobalSign** home page is displayed.

3. Click the **GlobalSign SSL** tab.
4. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.

The **GlobalSign SSL** configuration page is displayed.

GlobalSign SSL

General Information

* CA Account name

* Purpose/Usage

Proxy Required

Please contact support/admin to restart the AppViewX CA agent when proxy required is enabled/disabled or proxy settings in Menu >> Certificate >> Administration >> General Settings Proxy is modified

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)

CA Configuration

* SSL URL

Save **Cancel**

5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, Server and Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.

Fields	Description
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration

* SSL URL ⓘ

* User Name ⓘ

* Password ⓘ


CA Configuration - Field Description Table

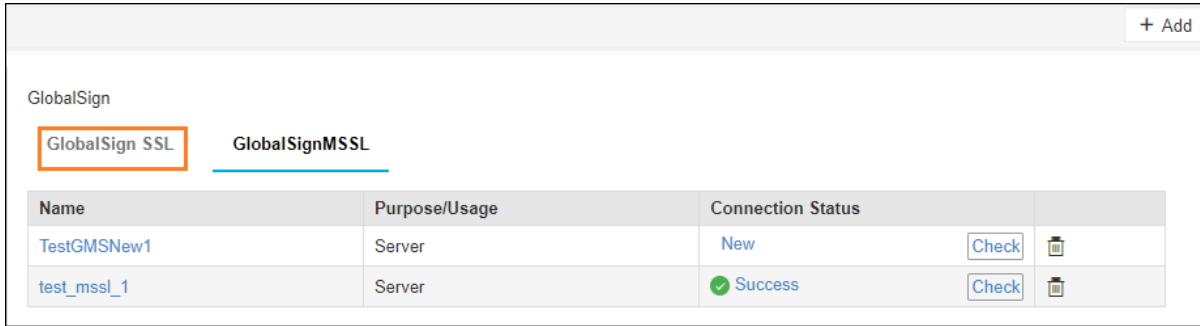
Fields	Description
* SSL URL	Base URL of the SSL API.
* User Name	Provide a username of the GCC to communicate with the CA.
* Password	Provide a password for the GCC to communicate with the CA.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click **Save**.

Validating GlobalSign SSL

Once the GlobalSign SSL settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GlobalSign SSL is properly configured.

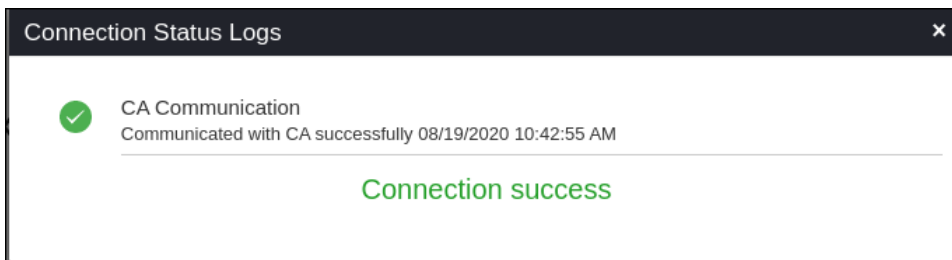
- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
- From the displayed CA, Select **GlobalSign**.
The **GlobalSign** home page is displayed.
- Click **GlobalSign SSL** from the left pane of the page.
The **GlobalSign SSL** home page is displayed.



Name	Purpose/Usage	Connection Status	
TestGMSNew1	Server	New	Check
test_mssl_1	Server	Success	Check

4. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



GlobalSign Atlas CA


- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring GlobalSign Atlas](#)
- [Validating GlobalSign Atlas](#)

Before You Begin

The prerequisites for configuring GlobalSign Atlas CA in AppViewX are as follows:

- Login and password to access AppViewX.
- Base URL, API Key, API Secret Key.
- A client certificate provided by the GlobalSign Atlas team.

Configuring GlobalSign Atlas

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **GlobalSign**.
The **GlobalSign** home page is displayed.
3. Choose the **GlobalSign Atlas** tab.
4. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **GlobalSign Atlas** configuration page is displayed.

[< GlobalSign Atlas](#)

General Information

* API Credential Friendly name [i](#)

* Purpose/Usage None Selected [i](#)

Proxy Required [i](#)

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) absecon [i](#)

CA Configuration

* Base URL [i](#)

* API Key [i](#)


* API Secret [i](#)

* Client Authentication filename.pkcs [i](#)

5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.



General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*API Credential Friendly name	Enter the API Credentials Friendly name (which is the CA Account name that will be used for the CA Policy and Enrollment).
*Purpose/Usage	Select the purpose of the certificate that can be requested using this account.

Fields	Description
	 Note: Users can select <i>Server</i> , <i>Client</i> or both.
Proxy Required	Select the checkbox if communication to the Certificate Authority (CA) has to use the proxy details provided in the general settings
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center that will be used to establish the communication with the CA.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Base URL	Enter the base URL required for constructing the API request.
API Key	Enter the API key which is the unique identifier used to authenticate a user.  Note: The API Key will be displayed as asterisks ()
API Secret	Enter the API secret to communicate with the CA.  Note: The API Key will be displayed as asterisks ()
*Client Authentication	Upload the certificate for client authentication in the .p12 or .pfx format only.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click the **Fetch Validation Policy and Save** button.

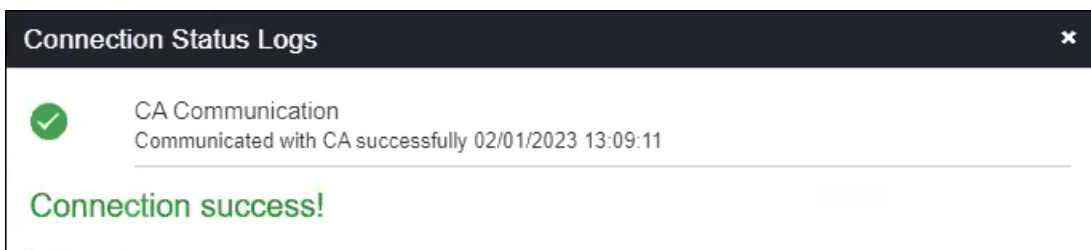
A confirmation message will appear “Validation Policy fetched and settings have been updated.” and the CA is created successfully. The connection status for the CA is displayed as New.

Name	Purpose/Usage	Connection Status
AR_GSA	Server,Client	Success
GLocalSignAtlas	Server,Client	New

Validating GlobalSign Atlas

Once the GlobalSign Atlas settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GlobalSign Atlas is properly configured.

- Go to (Menu) > SIGN+ > ADMINISTRATION > Certificate Authority.
- From the displayed CA, Select **GlobalSign**.
The **GlobalSign** home page is displayed.
- Click **GlobalSign Atlas** from the left pane of the page.
The **GlobalSign Atlas** home page is displayed.
- In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
- CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



GoDaddy CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring GoDaddy](#)


- [Validating GoDaddy](#)
- [View GoDaddy Product Units](#)

Before you begin

The prerequisites for configuring GoDaddy CA in AppViewX are as follows:

1. GoDaddy Customer Number, API key, and secret are required to make API Requests from AppViewX in order to perform CLM (Certificate Lifecycle Management) operations.
2. AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.
3. Customer Number, API key, and secret configuration in GoDaddy Account:
 - a. After logging into the GoDaddy portal with proper account credentials go to <https://developer.godaddy.com/keys>
 - b. Users will be asked to add an optional name, and the secret will be displayed which needs to be copied and will not be displayed further.
 - c. This API key and secret will be used for further communication.
 - d. Customer Number details are available on the Accounts page of the GoDaddy website
4. Product units should be available in the customer's GoDaddy account to perform CLM operations.

Configuring GoDaddy

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **GoDaddy**.
The **GoDaddy** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **GoDaddy** configuration page is displayed.

[GoDaddy](#)

General Information

* CA Account name ⓘ

* Purpose/Usage None Selected ▼ ⓘ

Proxy Required ⓘ

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) absecon ▼ ⓘ

CA Configuration

* Base URL ⓘ

* Customer Number

* API Key ⓘ

Save
Cancel

4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field Description Table


Fields	Description
*CA Account name	<p>A unique name to identify the CA setting.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #4a7ebb; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.</p> </div>
*Purpose/Usage	<p>Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled.</p> <p>Example: Server, Client.</p>
Proxy Required	<p>Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.</p>

Fields	Description
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the GoDaddy CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Base URL	This URL will contain the Base URL of the GoDaddy CA API instance. For example: https://api.godaddy.com
*Customer Number	Each user will have a unique customer number which is used to obtain the certificates from the GoDaddy CA account.
*API Key	API key generated in the GoDaddy portal which is used for GoDaddy API communications.
*API Secret	API Secret generated in the GoDaddy portal which is used for GoDaddy API communications.
First Name	First name of the GoDaddy Account user's name as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes.
Last Name	Last name of the GoDaddy Account user's name as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes.
Email Address	Email Id of the GoDaddy Account user's name as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes. Note: Valid email address.
Phone Number	Phone number of the GoDaddy Account user as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes.

Fields	Description
	 Note: Phone numbers must contain a minimum of 7 and a maximum of 15 numeric values.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Click **Save**.

Validating GoDaddy

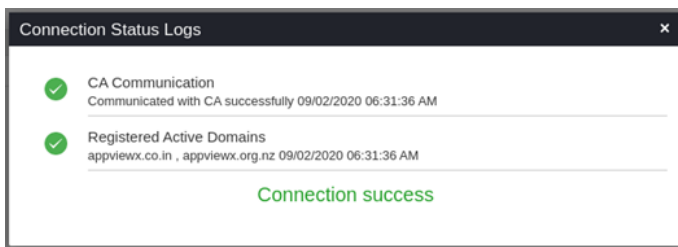
Once the GoDaddy settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GoDaddy is properly configured.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **GoDaddy**.

The **GoDaddy** home page is displayed.

3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



View GoDaddy Product Units

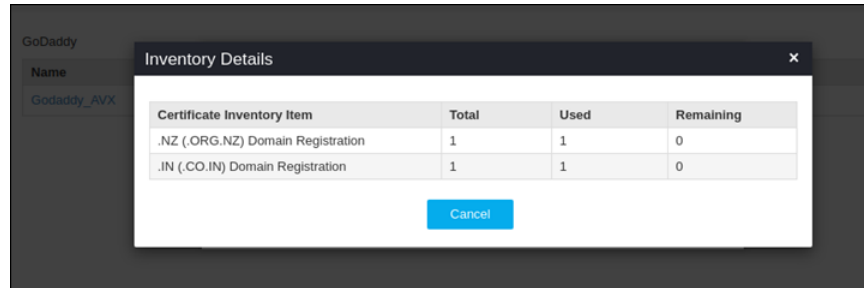
Each GoDaddy account has different types of SSL products and units. The below steps will allow users to know the availability of the products and their remaining units.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **GoDaddy**.

The **GoDaddy** home page is displayed.

- On the **GoDaddy** page, click **View** to fetch the product types and the units available for the GoDaddy account configured.

Once clicked, users can view the available and used product units.



Certificate Inventory Item	Total	Used	Remaining
.NZ (.ORG.NZ) Domain Registration	1	1	0
.IN (.CO.IN) Domain Registration	1	1	0

Google CA


- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Google](#)
- [Validating Google](#)

Before you begin

The prerequisites for configuring a Google CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- A Google client certificate or Google client authentication Json for a user having necessary access for enrolling the certificates and for other Certificate Lifecycle Management(CLM) operations.
- AppViewX servers should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.
- The URL <https://www.googleapis.com> should be reachable from AppViewX.

Configuring Google

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
- From the displayed CA, Select **Google**.
The **Google** home page is displayed.
- Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **Google** configuration page is displayed.

[< Google](#)

General Information

* Name

* Purpose/Usage None Selected i

Proxy Required

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) absecon

CA Configuration

* Region Select the region(s)

* Configure With Certificate Upload JSON Upload

* Certificate and Key filename.pkcs Upload

* Email Address

4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	<p>A unique name to identify the CA setting.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #4a7ebb; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.</p> </div>
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, Server and Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.











Fields	Description
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Configure either Certificate Upload or JSON Upload. These fields are necessary for invoking the Google CA APIs via Certificate Upload for Certificate Management. Select the Certificate Upload check box,

Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

Fields	Description
*Certificate and Key	Client authentication certificate for API communication.
*Email address	Email address of the user
*Project Id	Id of the project
*: Mandatory fields	


6. Select the JSON Upload check box and configure a CA. Click the Upload button to upload the JSON file.
7. Click **Validate and Fetch**. The issuer names available for the CA account will be fetched along with the validity of the issuers from the Certificate Authority.

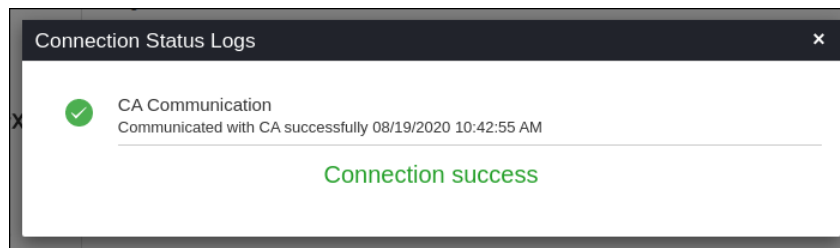
Location	CA Name	Validity	Delete
us-central1	pre-prod-root-ca	05/13/2030 20:02:21	
	testbed-root-ca	05/13/2030 20:27:49	
	prod-root-ca	04/23/2030 12:23:32	
	prod-inter-ca-level-981	06/14/2020 09:03:33	
	prod-inter-ca-level-200	06/14/2020 09:08:43	
	prod-inter-ca-level-201	06/14/2020 09:09:09	
	prod-inter-ca-level-000	06/14/2020 08:51:09	
	prod-inter-ca	04/23/2030 12:27:40	
	prod-inter-ca-level-01	06/14/2020 09:00:50	
europa-west1	test-bed-root-ca	05/13/2030 21:09:13	

8. Click **Save**.

Validating Google

Once the Google settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Google is properly configured.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **Google**.
The **Google** home page is displayed.
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



HashiCorp Vault CA

- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring HashiCorp Vault](#)
- [Validating HashiCorp Vault](#)


Before You Begin

The prerequisites for configuring Hashicorp Vault CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- Login and password to access AppViewX.
- Base URL, Role ID, and Secret Key for the **APP ROLE method** and Base URL, Access Key, Secret Key, and Role Name for the **AWS method** in the CA Configurations.

Configuring HashiCorp Vault

Steps to Configure HashiCorp Vault CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **HashiCorp Vault**.
The **HashiCorp Vault** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **HashiCorp Vault** configuration page is displayed.

General Information

* Name

* Purpose/Usage

Proxy Required

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)

CA Configuration

* Base URL

* Method


* Role ID

* Secret Key

[Fetch Secret Engine](#)

4. Update the details in the General Information section as described in the table below:

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	<p>A unique name to identify the CA setting.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #4a7ebb; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', and '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.</p> </div>

Fields	Description
*Purpose/Usage	<p>The dropdown contains checkboxes for the certificate type for which the CLM actions will be enabled.</p> <p>The values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server • Client • Code Signing <p>One or more values can be selected depending on the type of account users need to create.</p>
Proxy Required	<p>Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.</p>
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	<p>Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.</p>
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the tables below. These fields are necessary for invoking the Hashicorp CA Secret Engine for Certificate Management. The fields displayed in the CA Configuration section depend on the value selected in the **Method** field. The two auth method values are

- **APP ROLE** - The APP ROLE auth method allows machines or apps to authenticate with Vault-defined roles. An "AppRole" represents a set of Vault policies and login constraints that must be met to receive a token with those policies. An AppRole can be created for a particular machine, or even a particular user on that machine or a service spread across machines. The credentials required for successful login depend upon the constraints set on the AppRole associated with the credentials.
- **AWS** - The AWS auth method provides an automated mechanism to retrieve a Vault token for IAM principals and AWS EC2 instances. Unlike most Vault auth methods, this method does not require manual first-deploying or provisioning of security-sensitive credentials (tokens, username/password, client certificates, etc), by operators under many circumstances.

CA Configuration for App Role - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Base URL	The base of URL of the CA account.

Fields	Description
*Method	APP ROLE
*Role ID	RoleID is an identifier that selects the AppRole against which the other credentials are evaluated. When authenticating against this auth method's login endpoint, the RoleID is a required argument at all times. By default, RoleIDs are unique UUIDs, which allow them to serve as secondary secrets to the other credential information.
*Secret Key	Secrey Key (SecretID) is a credential that is required by default for any login and is intended to always be secret. They can be created against an AppRole either via generation of a 128-bit purely random UUID by the role itself or via specific, custom values. Similarly to tokens, Secret keys have properties like usage-limit, TTLs and expirations.
*: Mandatory fields	

CA Configuration for AWS - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Base URL	The base of URL of the CA account.
*Method	AWS
*Access Key	Access Keys are used to sign the requests that are sent. Access Key and Secret Key are used for programmatic (API) access to AWS services.
*Secret Key	Secret Key (SecretID) is a credential that is required by default for any login and is intended to always be secret. Similar to tokens, SecretIDs have properties like usage-limit, TTLs, and expirations.
*Role Name	The basic mechanism of operation (AWS authorization workflow) is per-role. Roles are registered in the method and associated with a specific authentication type that cannot be changed once the role has been created. Roles can also be associated with various optional restrictions, such as the set of allowed policies and max TTLs on the generated tokens.
*: Mandatory fields	

The correct values entered in the fields establish a connection with the Hashicorp vault to be able to fetch the secret engine.

6. Click the **Fetch Secret Engine** button.

A list of PKI secret engines is displayed. These will be presented to users in the policy. from where they can select the respective secret engines.

CA Configuration

* Base URL

* Method

* Role ID

* Secret Key

[Fetch Secret Engine](#)

Secret Engines

Secret Engine Name
pki_ui_integration
pki_int
pki_call
pki_testdemo

7. Click **Save**.

The Account details are displayed in a grid at the bottom of the screen, with options to options to edit, check (connection status), and delete.

Editing an Account

1. Go to the **HashiCorp Vault CA** account home page

The list of Accounts is displayed in the grid.

Name	Purpose/Usage	Connection Status	
APPROLE-DEMO	Server,Client,Code Signing	Success	Check
APP_ROLE_TEST1	Server,Client,Code Signing	Success	Check
AWS_TEST	Server,Client,Code Signing	Success	Check
demptest	Server,Client	New	Check
HVC_DOC_V1	Client	Failed	Check

2. Click the account name from the 'Name' column in the grid.

The General Information and CA Configuration sections are displayed with pre-populated values.






3. Change any of the editable fields and click the **Fetch Secret Engine** button.

4. Click the **Update** button.

Deleting an Account

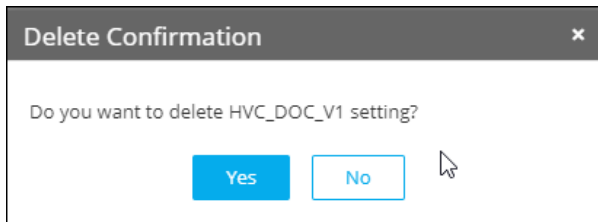
1. Go to the **HashiCorp Vault** CA account home page

The list of Accounts is displayed in the grid.

HashiCorp			
Name	Purpose/Usage	Connection Status	
APPROLE-DEMO	Server,Client,Code Signing	Success	Check 
APP_ROLE_TEST1	Server,Client,Code Signing	Success	Check 
AWS_TEST	Server,Client,Code Signing	Success	Check 
demptest	Server,Client	New	Check 
HVC_DOC_V1	Client	Failed	Check 

2. In the last column of the grid with the listed accounts, click the **Delete** or bin icon.


The Delete Confirmation pop-up is displayed.



3. Click **Yes**.

Validating HashiCorp Vault

To check the connection status of an account,

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, Select **HashiCorp Vault**.
The **HashiCorp Vault** home page is displayed.
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click the **Check** button.
The Success or Failure value is displayed.
4. Update the account details accordingly to get a "success" status.

HydrantID CA

- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring HydrantID CA](#)
- [Validating HydrantID CA](#)

Before You Begin

The prerequisites for configuring a HydrantID CA account in AppViewX as follows:

1. To create a CA configuration the following values are required:

- Base URL
- API Key ID
- API Key


Once the organization (AppViewX) has subscribed for a HydrantID account, you will be provided with a **Username**, **Password**, and **Login URL**.

2. The API Key ID and API Key should be of the following User Roles in HydrantId:

- Account Auditor
- Organization Admin
- Organization Auditor
- Requestor

3. Users with role **Account Admin** in the HydrantID application can create the above roles. Only account admins can generate the API Key ID and API Key for the roles. Both values can be viewed for a limited time only. Ensure to note these values after the roles are added.

Configuring HydrantID CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **HydrantID**.
The **HydrantID** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The HydrantID CA details page is displayed.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information

* CA Account name

i

* Purpose/Usage

None Selected
▼

i

Proxy Required

i

Data Center
(AppViewX's CA agent)

absecon
▼

i

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Permissible special characters are '.', '-', '_'. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Server, Client and Code-signing are the supported types.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the HydrantId APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration

* Base URL

i

* API Key ID

i

* API Key

i

Fetch hydrantID polcies

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Base URL	This URL will contain the hostname of the HydrantID CA instance and used for constructing the API requests. the default value is https://acm.hydrantid.com/api/v2
*API Key ID	Enter the API Key ID generated in the HydrantID application. Its is a unique value specific to the user created in hydrant and is used to authenticate the user.
*API Key	Enter the API Key generated in the HydrantID application. Its is a unique value specific to the user created in hydrant and used to authenticate and authorize requests.
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Fetch hydrantID policies**.

A list of policies associated with the account are displayed. These are made available from HydrantID and are used for requesting different types of certificates.



Note: Configuration can only be saved in AppViewX if the profiles are available.

7. Update the following details in the **Advanced Settings** section as described in the table.

Advanced Settings

Poll after CSR submission ?

* Retry Count ?

* Retry Frequency seconds ?

Advanced Settings - Field Description Table


Fields	Description
Poll after CSR Submission	A check box field when selected will fetch the certificated immediately after CSR Submission on enrollment, renew, and reissue of certificate with the retry count and retry frequency as described below.
*Retry Count	The number of times the polling will take place after CSR submission. Enter a value between 1 and 10.
*Retry Frequency	The duration of the polling. enter the value between 1 and 30seconds.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

8. Click **Save**.

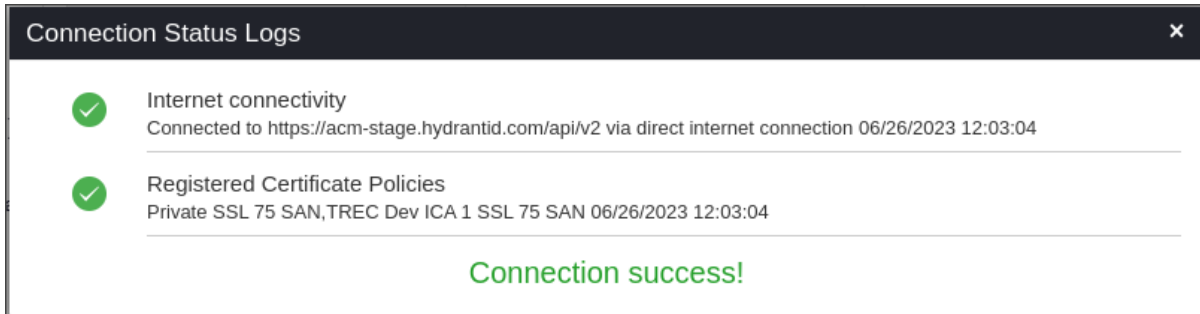
The created HydrantID configuration settings will be added. A pop-up message is displayed as **<CA_name> Settings Added**.

Validating HydrantID CA

Once the HydrantID settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and HydrantID is properly configured.

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
- From the displayed CA, select **HydrantID**.
The **HydrantID** home page is displayed.
- In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**



InCommon CA


- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring InCommon CA](#)
- [Validating InCommon CA](#)

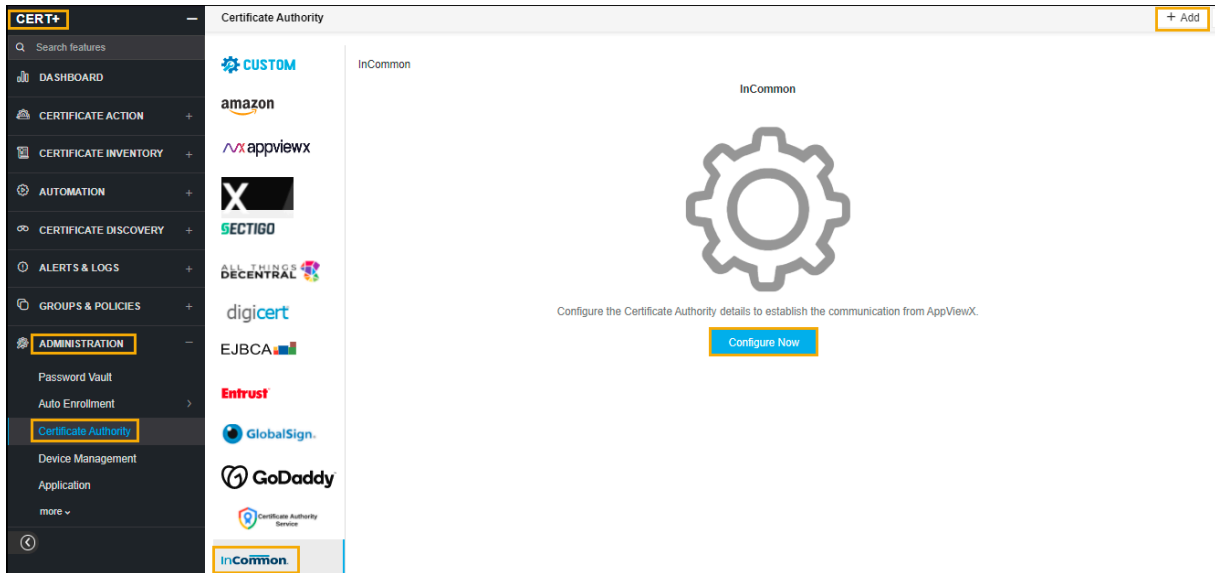
Before you begin

The prerequisites for configuring InCommon CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- InCommon Certificate Manager credentials having necessary access for enrolling the certificates.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the **proxy**. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Username and Password as set up in the Certificate Manager tool.
- An OrgID as provided by InCommon Certificate Manager.
- The login URL and URI.

Configuring InCommon CA

1. Go to  **(Menu)** > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **InCommon**.
The **InCommon** home page is displayed.



3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively. The **InCommon** configuration page is displayed.

[← InCommon](#)

General Information

- * CA Account name ⓘ
- * Purpose/Usage ⓘ
- Proxy Required ⓘ

Please contact support/admin to restart the AppViewX CA agent when proxy required is enabled/disabled or proxy settings in Menu>> Certificate>> Administration >> General Settings Proxy is modified

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) ⓘ


CA Configuration

- * Base URL ⓘ ✕
- * Login URI ⓘ
- * User Name ⓘ
- * Password ⓘ

4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


General Information - Field Description Table


Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting.

Fields	Description
	 Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name must not start with special characters.
*Purpose/ Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Eg. Server, Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the InCommon CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the InCommon CA instance. Eg - <a href="https://cert-manager.com/customer/<<customer_uri>>/ssl">https://cert-manager.com/customer/<<customer_uri>>/ssl - here base URL is https://cert-manager.com .  Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name must not start with special characters.
*Login URL	URI specific to the InCommon CA Customer Account. Eg <a href="https://cert-manager.com/customer/<<customer_uri>>/ssl">https://cert-manager.com/customer/<<customer_uri>>/ssl - here URI is customer_uri .
*User Name	User name for the account created with InCommon CA.
*Password	Password for the account created with InCommon CA.
*Organization ID	InCommon supports organization hierarchy. Id of the Organization Unit/ Department in which Certificates need to be managed has to be specified

Fields	Description
	here. CLM actions done using this CA account will be specific to this particular organization's id/department.
<p>*: <i>Mandatory fields</i></p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: If the certificates from multiple organization's units/departments need to be managed, then a separate CA has to be configured for each organization unit/department in the Incommon CA setting page.</p> </div>	


6. Select **Fetch Certificate Types**

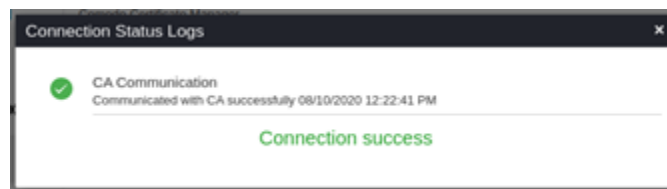
The Certificate types available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority.

7. Click **Save**.

Validating InCommon CA

Once the InCommon settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and InCommon is properly configured.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **InCommon**.
The **InCommon** home page is displayed.
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.
The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Let's Encrypt CA


- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Let's Encrypt CA](#)
- [Validating Let's Encrypt](#)

Before you begin


The prerequisites for configuring Let's Encrypt CA account in AppViewX are as follows:


- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Any one of the following Let's Encrypt certificate enrolment URL as per requirement :
 1. <https://acme-staging-v02.api.letsencrypt.org> for **staging**.
 2. <https://acme-v02.api.letsencrypt.org> for **production**.


Configuring Let's Encrypt CA


1. Go to  **(Menu)** > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Let's Encrypt**.
The **Let's Encrypt** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The Let's Encrypt configuration page is displayed.


Certificate Authority


 CUSTOM


 amazon


 appviewx


 X


 SECTIGO


 ALL THINGS DECENTRAL


 digicert

 EJBCA

 Entrust

 GlobalSign.

 GoDaddy

 Certificate Authority Service

< Lets Encrypt

General Information

* CA Account name ⓘ

* Purpose/Usage None Selected ⓘ

Proxy Required ⓘ

Please contact support/admin to restart the AppViewX CA agent when proxy required is enabled/disabled or proxy settings in Menu>> Certificate>> Administration >> General Settings Proxy is modified

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) absecon ⓘ

CA Configuration


* Base URL ⓘ

Email ID(s) ⓘ

Save
Cancel

4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Name	<p>A unique name to identify the CA setting.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name must not start with special characters.</p> </div>
*Purpose/Usage	The certificate types will be managed by these settings. For now, Let's Encrypt is having only one purpose Server .

Fields	Description
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Let's Encrypt CA APIs for Certificate Management.


CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Base URL	Let's Encrypt certificate enrolment URL either staging or production based on the requirement.
*Email ID(s)	Enter email ID(s) in this field to receive notifications from Let's Encrypt. Multiple email ID must be separated by comma (,).
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Click **Save**.

Validating Let's Encrypt

Once the Let's Encrypt settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Let's Encrypt is properly configured.

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
- From the displayed CA, select **Let's Encrypt**.
The **Let's Encrypt** home page is displayed.
- In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.
The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

Microsoft Enterprise CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Microsoft Enterprise CA](#)
- [Validating Microsoft Enterprise](#)

Before you begin

The prerequisites for configuring Microsoft Enterprise CA in AppViewX are as follows:

- AppViewX Windows Gateway installer should be installed in a windows machine, running and reachable from AppViewX vendor plugin through the Communication Modes described below.

Communication Mode Table

Communication mode	Category	Windows gateway machine	Microsoft CA
NATIVE API	User account type	Service account	Service account.
	User permission	NA	Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users Enroll permission at Certificate template level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users
	Services	RPC service	RPC service certutil.exe command availability
	Ports	NA	135 as the incoming port
POWERSHELL	User account type	Service account	Service account.

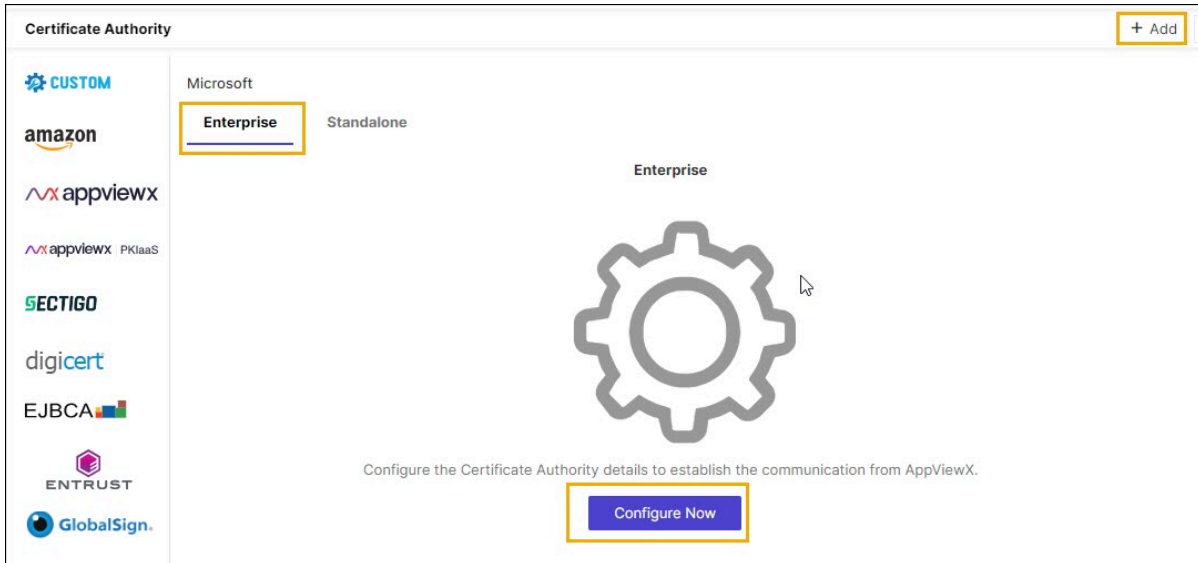
Communication Mode Table (continued)

Communication mode	Category	Windows gateway machine	Microsoft CA
	User permission	NA	Full control permission to C:\Windows\Temp Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users
	Services	RPC Service, WinRM Service, WinRM Configuration, Powershell remoting, certutil.exe command availability	RPC Service, WinRM Service, WinRM Configuration, Powershell remoting, certutil.exe command availability.
	Ports	NA	5985
WMI	User account type	Service account	Service account
	User permission	NA	Full control permission to C:\Windows\Temp Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users
	Services	WMI service certutil.exe command availability	WMI service certutil.exe command availability
	Ports	NA.	135, 445 or 139

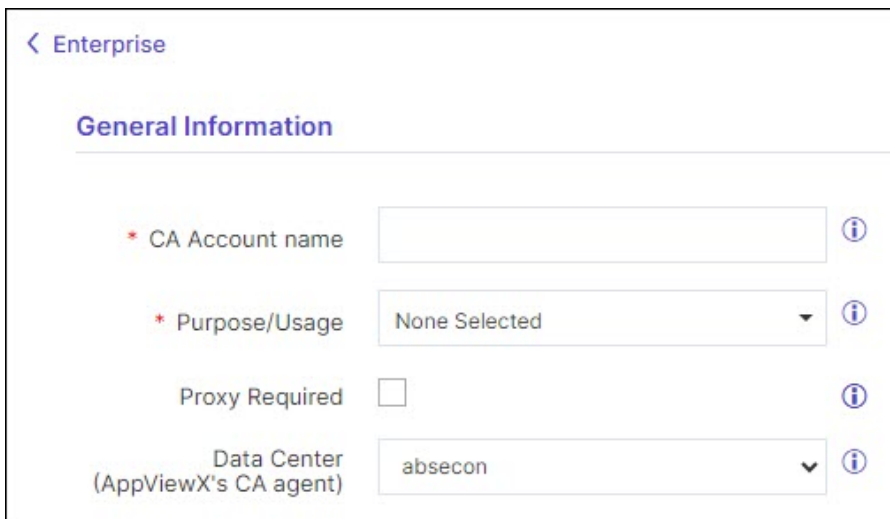
Configuring Microsoft Enterprise CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Microsoft**.

The **Microsoft** home page is displayed.



3. Select the **Enterprise** tab.
4. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.



The screenshot shows the 'Enterprise' configuration page. The 'General Information' section is expanded, showing the following fields:

- CA Account name**: A text input field with an asterisk (*) and an information icon (i).
- Purpose/Usage**: A dropdown menu with 'None Selected' and an information icon (i).
- Proxy Required**: A checkbox with an information icon (i).
- Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)**: A dropdown menu with 'absecon' and an information icon (i).

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting.

Fields	Description
	Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example. Server, Client, Code Signing
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration - Field Description Table


Fields	Description
*Windows Gateway URL	Enter the URL where the AppViewX agent is running.
*Windows Gateway Type	The mode of communication types from Windows Gateway machine to CA machine. Available types are NATIVE API, POWERSHELL, WMI . Refer Communication Mode
Client Authentication Certificate	The client certificate used while installing Windows Gateway. Users can use the default client certificate (ClientCertificateGateway.pfx) or the custom certificate given by the Customer.
*Credential Type	Type of credential to be used. Either Manual Entry or Credential List .
Username	User name of the credentials.
Password	Password for the username.
*: Mandatory fields	


7. Click **Fetch CA Names** to retrieve CAs accessible from Windows Gateway installed machine. Upon successful completion of Fetch CA Names, all reachable CAs listed in **Select CA**.


8. Click on one specific CA and proceed.


Using Native API


Certificate Authority


 GlobalSign.


 GoDaddy


 Certificate Authority Service


 InCommon


 Let's Encrypt

 Microsoft

 Symantec

 Trustwave

 Programmable

 Known

* Windows Gateway URL ⓘ

Windows Gateway Type Native API POWERSHELL ⓘ
 WMI

Client Authentication Certificate ⓘ

Fetch CA Names and Server Details.

Click to fetch the available Microsoft CAs in the domain.

Select CA ▼

* CA Machine Hostname ⓘ

* CA Name ⓘ

CA Manager Approval ⓘ

* Time Zone ⓘ

Using POWERSHELL / WMI

Certificate Authority

GlobalSign.

GoDaddy

Certificate Authority Service

InCommon

Let's Encrypt

Microsoft

Symantec

Trustwave

Programmable

Known

* Windows Gateway URL: ⓘ

Windows Gateway Type: Native API POWERSHELL WMI

* Credential Type: ⓘ

User Name: ⓘ

Password: ⓘ

Client Authentication Certificate: ⓘ

Fetch CA Names and Server Details.
Click to fetch the available Microsoft CAs in the domain.

Select CA: ⌵

* CA Machine Hostname: ⓘ

CA Details - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
Select CA	All the reachable CAs are listed here.
*CA Machine Hostname	Host name of the CA Machine will be auto-filled.
*CA Name	Name of the CA chosen which will be auto-filled.
CA Manager Approval	Approves the pending enroll / Renew request submitted from AppViewX Certificate.
*Time Zone	To perform scheduled and Optimized CA discovery, please provide time zone value.
*: Mandatory fields	

a. Configure the **Template Details**.

Once CA is selected from the **Select CA** list, the **Template** details should have auto-filled as shown below.

Template Name	OID	Action
testcreate	1.3.6.1.4.1.311.21.8.9988521.11120394.14369442.2024444.12371783.122.16647478.14904988	
ServerAndClientAuth	1.3.6.1.4.1.311.21.8.9988521.11120394.14369442.2024444.12371783.122.16389053.1742441	
AllEKUs	1.3.6.1.4.1.311.21.8.9988521.11120394.14369442.2024444.12371783.122.16750408.13078327	
CustomEKU	1.3.6.1.4.1.311.21.8.9988521.11120394.14369442.2024444.12371783.122.2289813.6663087	
Web Server	1.3.6.1.4.1.311.21.8.9988521.11120394.14369442.2024444.12371783.122.11497616.5606298	



Note: If the desired template is not listed, it might not be published in AD. Users can add it manually through MS Template name and OID fields as shown below.

b. In the Template Details section, select/enter the details as shown below.

Template Details

You can either manually enter template details or upload a file.

* MS Template Name

OID

OR

Upload File

Uploaded details will be added automatically. [Download Sample Template](#)

9. Click **Save**.

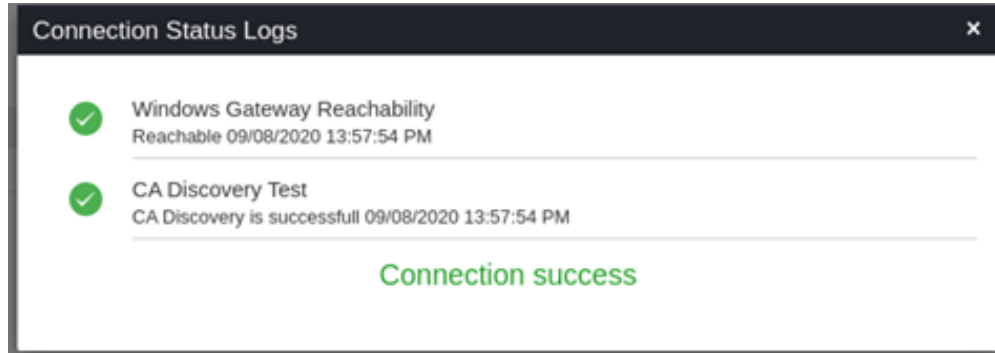
Validating Microsoft Enterprise

Once the Microsoft Enterprise settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Microsoft Enterprise is properly configured.

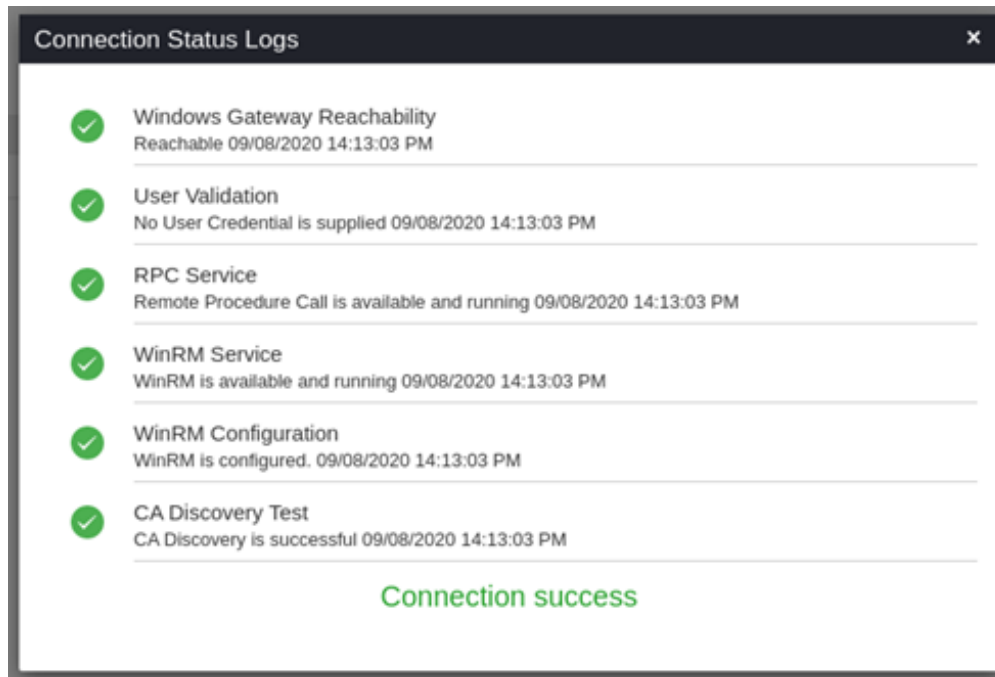
1. Go to (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Microsoft**.
The **Microsoft** home page is displayed.
3. Select the **Enterprise** tab.

4. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

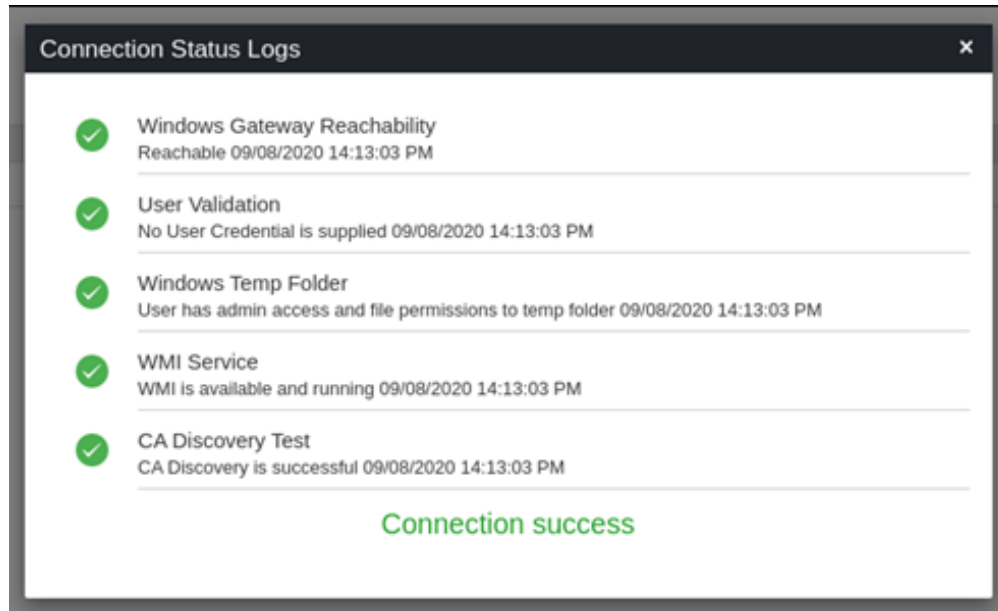
The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



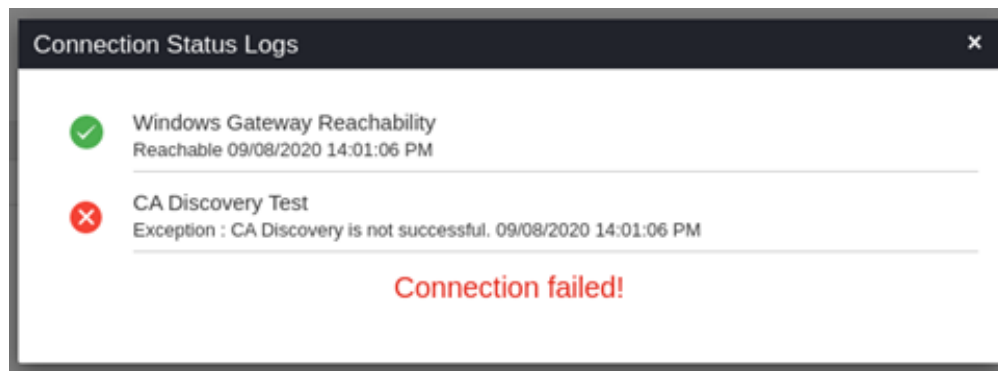
Success Scenario for Native API



Success Scenario for Powershell



Failure scenario for WMI



Microsoft Standalone CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Microsoft Standalone CA](#)
- [Validating Microsoft Standalone](#)

Before you begin

The prerequisites for configuring Microsoft Standalone CA in AppViewX are as follows:

- AppViewX Windows Gateway installer should be installed in a windows machine, running and reachable from AppViewX vendor plugin through the Communication Modes described below.


Communication Mode Table

Communication mode	Category	Windows gateway machine	Microsoft CA
NATIVE API	User account type	Service account	Service account
	User permission	NA	Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users Enroll permission at Certificate template level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users
	Services	RPC service	RPC service certutil.exe command availability
	Ports	NA	135 as incoming port
POWERSHELL	User account type	Service account	Service account
	User permission	NA	Full control permission to C:\Windows\Temp Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users
	Services	RPC Service, WinRM Service, WinRM Configuration, Powershell remoting, certutil.exe command availability	RPC Service, WinRM Service, WinRM Configuration, Powershell remoting, certutil.exe command availability
	Ports	NA	5985

Communication Mode Table (continued)


Communication mode	Category	Windows gateway machine	Microsoft CA
WMI	User account type	Service account	Service account
	User permission	NA	Full control permission to C:\Windows\Temp Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users
	Services	WMI service certutil.exe command availability	WMI service certutil.exe command availability
	Ports	NA	135, 445 or 139

Configuring Microsoft Standalone CA

- Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
- From the displayed CA, select **Microsoft**.
The **Microsoft** home page is displayed.
- Select the **Standalone** tab.
- In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click and then click **+Add** icon or **Configure Now** button.

5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
Name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters. </div>
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example: Server, Client, and Code Signing.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table:

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Windows Gateway URL	Enter the URL where the AppViewX agent is running.
*Windows Gateway Type	The mode of communication types from Windows Gateway machine to CA machine. Available types are NATIVE API, POWERSHELL, WMI .
Client Authentication Certificate	The client certificate used while installing Windows Gateway. Users can use the default client certificate (Client Certificate Gateway.pfx) or the custom certificate given by the Customer.
*Credential Type	Type of credential to be used. Either Manual Entry or Credential List .
Username	User name of the credentials.
Password	Password for the username.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Click **Fetch CA Names** to retrieve CAs accessible from Windows Gateway installed machine.
Upon successful completion of Fetch CA Names, all reachable CAs listed in **Select CA**.
- Click on one specific CA and proceed.

Dynamic Fields for Select CA Section

Fields	Description
Select CA	All the reachable CAs are listed here.
*CA Machine Hostname	Host name of the CA Machine will be auto-filled.
*CA Name	Name of the CA chosen which will be auto-filled.
CA Manager Approval	Approves the pending enroll / Renew request submitted from AppViewX Certificate.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

Using Native API

Certificate Authority

CA Configuration

GlobalSign.

GoDaddy

Certificate Authority Service

InCommon

Let's Encrypt

Microsoft

Symantec

Trustwave

Programmable

Known

Windows Gateway URL ⓘ

Windows Gateway Type Native API POWERSHELL ⓘ
 WMI

Client Authentication Certificate ⓘ

Fetch CA Names and Server Details.
Click to fetch the available Microsoft CAs in the domain.

CA Machine Hostname ⓘ

CA Name ⓘ


CA Manager Approval ⓘ

Using Powershell and WMI

9. Click **Save**.

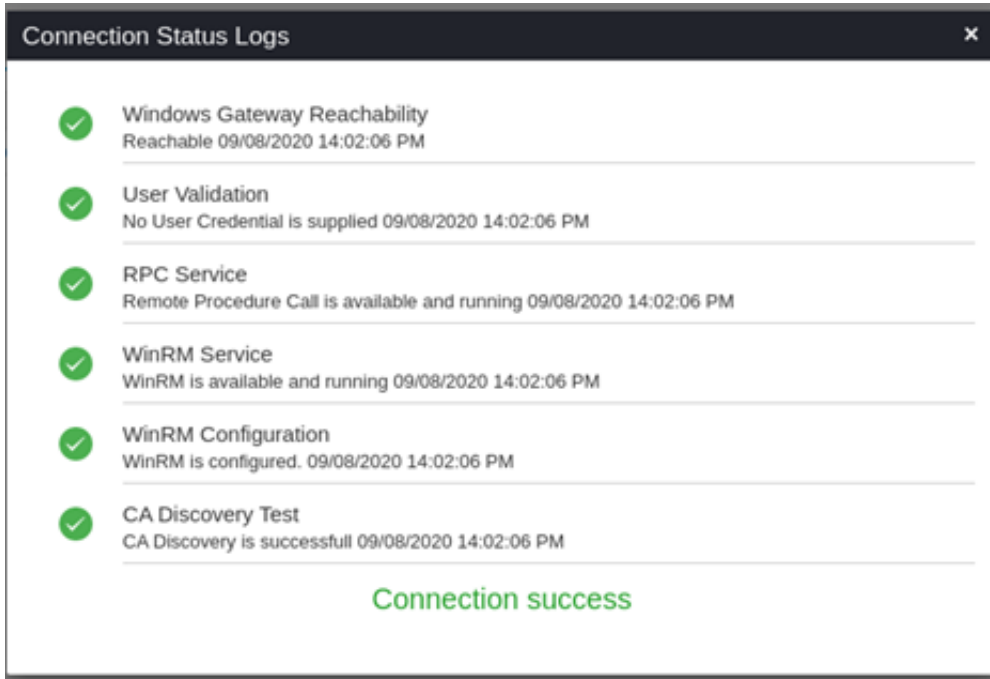
Validating Microsoft Standalone

Once the Microsoft Standalone settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Microsoft Enterprise is properly configured.

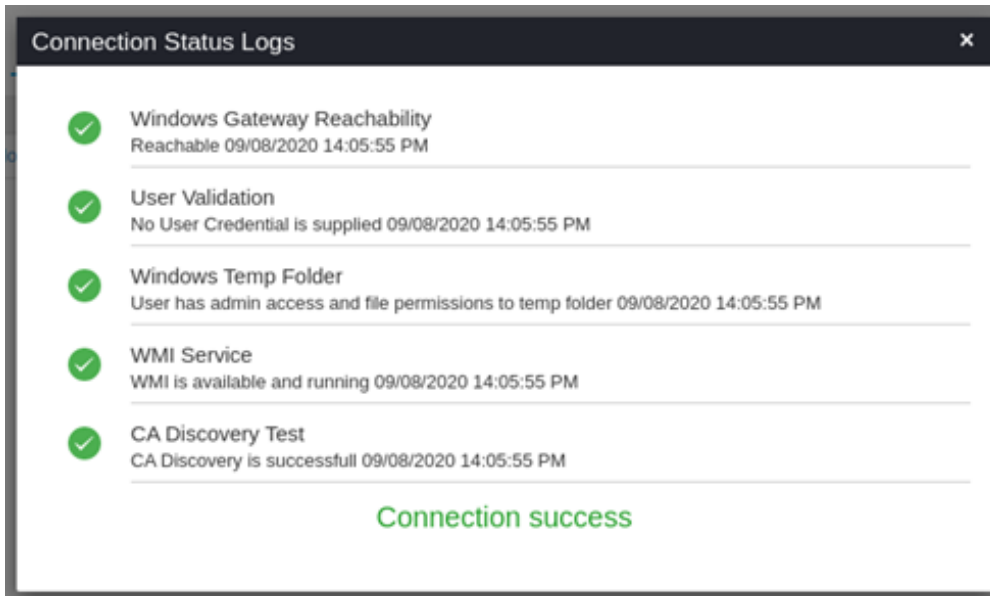
1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Microsoft**.
The **Microsoft** home page is displayed.
3. Select the **Standalone** tab.
4. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**. Success scenario for Native API Success scenario for Powershell Success scenario for WMI.

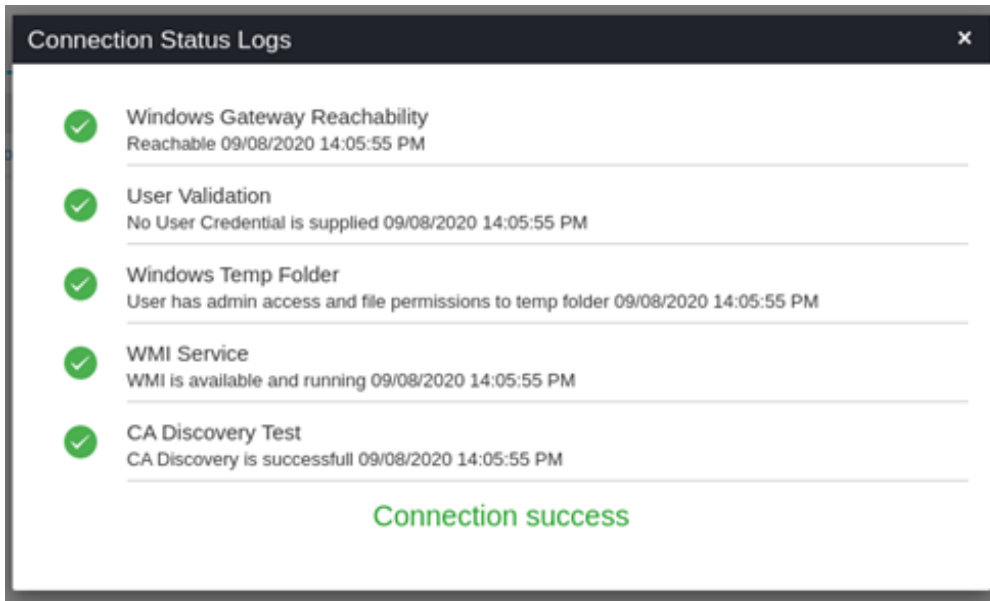
Success scenario for Native API



Success scenario for Powershell



Success scenario for WMI



Nexus CA


- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Nexus](#)
- [Validating Nexus](#)

Before you Begin

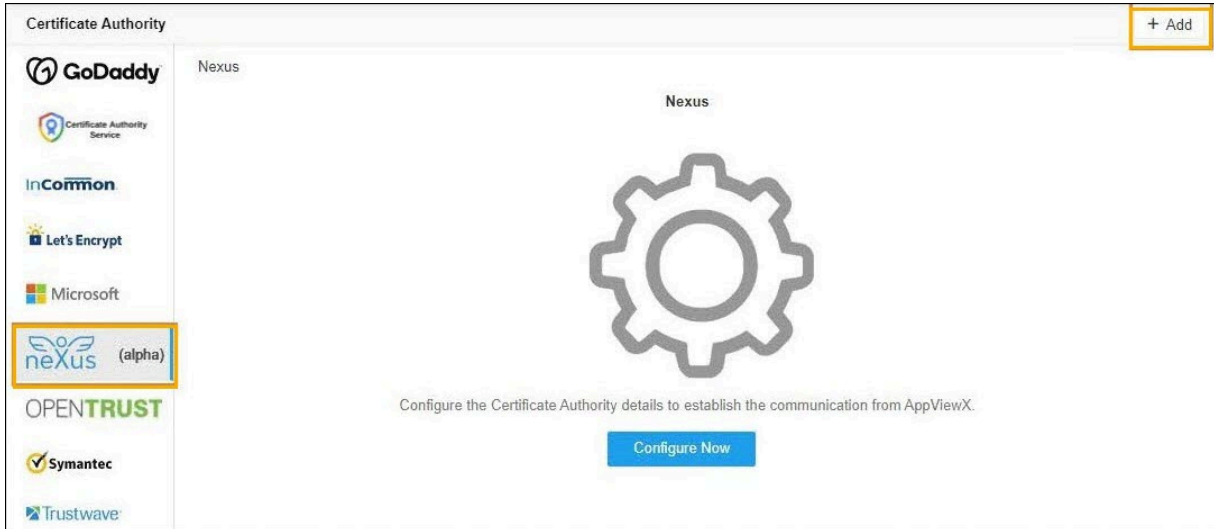
The prerequisites for configuring a Nexus CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

- A Nexus Account with Administrator role Access.
- Before discovery or enrollment, the customer must upload the CA certificates manually.
- The AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.

Configuring Nexus

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Nexus**.

The **Nexus** home page is displayed.



3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively. The Nexus configuration page is displayed.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

[← Nexus](#)

General Information

* CA Account name ⓘ

* Purpose/Usage Server, Client ▼ ⓘ

Proxy Required ⓘ

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) AUS ▼ ⓘ

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. No special characters other than '!', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, server and clients
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.

Fields	Description
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration

* Client Authentication Upload ?

* Base URL ?

* Organization ID ?

Fetch Procedures

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*SSL URL	Base URL of the SSL API
*User Name	Provide a username of the GCC to communicate with the CA.
*Password	Provide a password for the GCC to communicate with the CA.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Select **Fetch Procedures**.

The procedures available in the Nexus CA account will be fetched and listed for the specific user.

InCommon

Let's Encrypt

Microsoft

nexus

OPENTRUST

Symantec

Trustwave

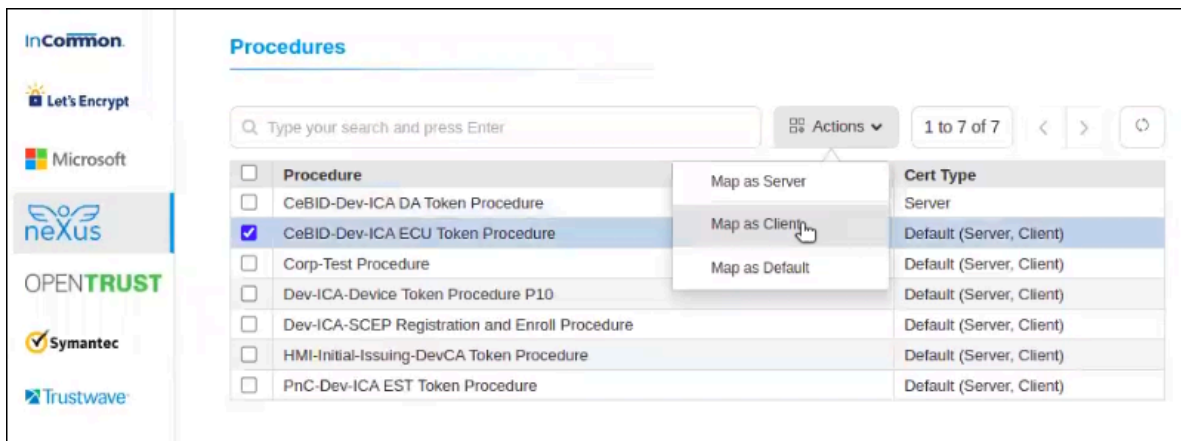
Procedures

Actions

1 to 7 of 7
< > ↻

	Procedure	Cert Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	CeBID-Dev-ICA DA Token Procedure	Default (Server, Client)
<input type="checkbox"/>	CeBID-Dev-ICA ECU Token Procedure	Default (Server, Client)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Corp-Test Procedure	Default (Server, Client)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Dev-ICA-Device Token Procedure P10	Default (Server, Client)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Dev-ICA-SCEP Registration and Enroll Procedure	Default (Server, Client)
<input type="checkbox"/>	HMI-Initial-Issuing-DevCA Token Procedure	Default (Server, Client)
<input type="checkbox"/>	PnC-Dev-ICA EST Token Procedure	Default (Server, Client)


7. To map the fetched procedures, click on one or many and click the **Actions** dropdown
- **CASE 1** - If the user selects Server only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Server.** and **MAP as Default**
 - **CASE 2** - If the user selects Client only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Client.** and **MAP as Default**
 - **CASE 3** - If the user selects Server and Client both in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will have both the actions **Map as Client** , **Map as Server**, and **MAP as Default**



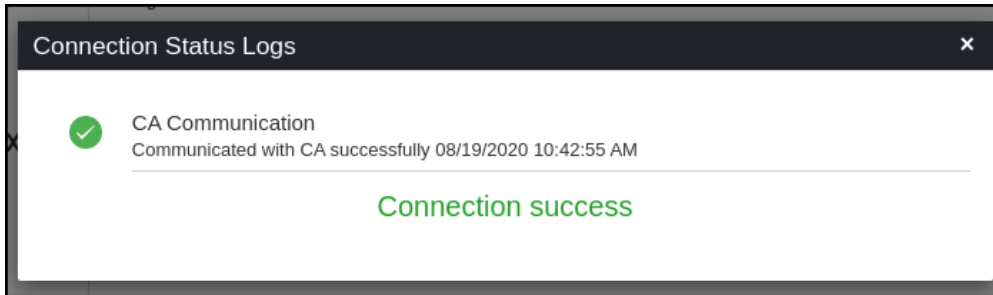
8. Click **Save**.

Validating Nexus

Once the Nexus settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Nexus is configured properly.

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Nexus**.
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



Sectigo CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Sectigo CA](#)
- [Validating Sectigo CA](#)

Before you begin

The prerequisites for configuring a Sectigo CA account in AppViewX are as follows:

1. To create a CA configuration the following values are required:
 - Base URL
 - Login URI
 - Username (The new administrator's login name. Refer point 2.)
 - Password
 - Organization ID (Refer point 4.)

Once your organization has subscribed for a Sectigo account, you will be provided with a **Username**, **Password**, and **Login URL** for SCM (Sectigo Certificate Manager). The default format of this URL is <https://cert-manager.com/customer/<customer URI>/>, where **<customer URI>** is a path segment specific to your company.

2. The Username and Password should be of the following administrators:
 - Master Registration Authority Officer (MRAO)
 - Registration Authority Officer (RAO)
3. The above administrators should have the following privileges.


Privileges	
Allow SSL details changing	Enables the new MRAO, RAO SSL, and DRAO SSL to change the details of SSL certificates by navigating to Certificates > SSL Certificates.
Allow SSL auto approve	SSL certificates requested by the MRAO are automatically approved, and those requested by a RAO SSL and DRAO SSL are automatically approved by the administrator of same level and await approval from higher level administrator.

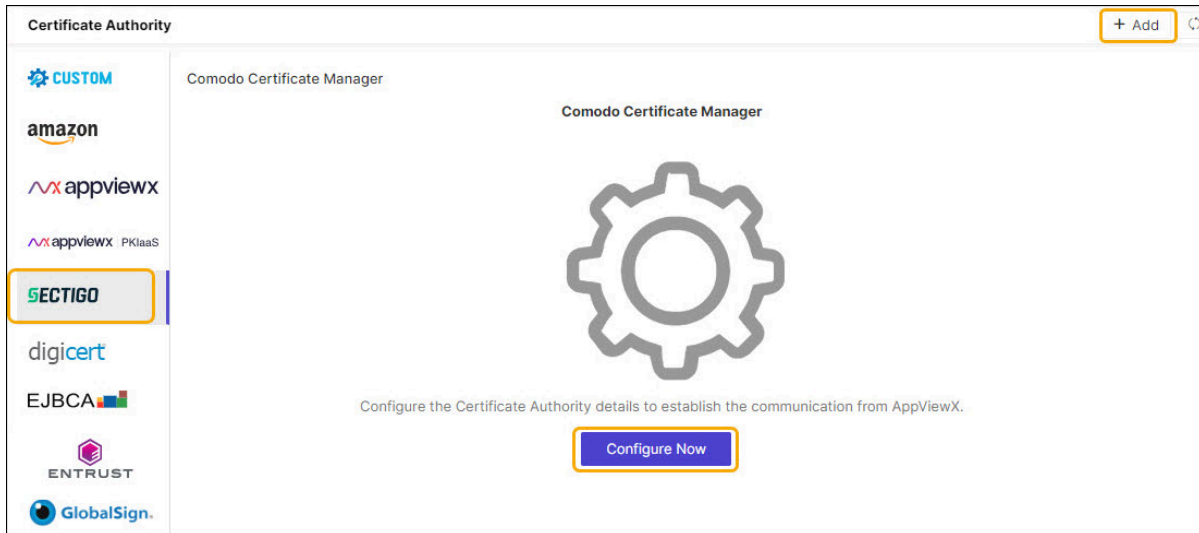
To review the administrator details in the SCM, navigate to **Settings > Admins**, select the administrator in the list, and click **Edit**. This displays the Edit Client Admin dialog, Add/Edit the necessary privileges and click **Save**.

4. **Organization Id:** Organizations are umbrella entities created by administrators for the purposes of requesting, issuing, and managing certificates for domains and employees. The Organizations page is used to add and modify the organizations.

To review the organization details in the SCM, navigate to **Organizations**, select the organization in the list, and click **Edit**. This displays the Edit Organization dialog shown in the following illustration.

Configuring Sectigo CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Symantec**.
The **Sectigo** home page is displayed.



3. (Optional if creating for the first time) Select the **Comodo Certificate Manager** tab.
4. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively. The Sectigo CA details page is displayed.
5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information

* CA Account name ⓘ

* Purpose/Usage None Selected ⓘ

Proxy Required ⓘ

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) absecon ⓘ

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. <i>Example:</i> Server and Client.

Fields	Description
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Sectigo CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration

- * Base URL ⓘ
- * Login URI ⓘ
- * User Name ⓘ
- * Password ⓘ
- * Organization ID ⓘ

[Fetch Certificate Types](#)

To fetch certificate types that are assigned to the configured user which will be used during certificate enrollment, policy creation, through out the product

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Base URL	This URL will contain the hostname of the Sectigo CA instance and used for constructing the API requests.
*Login URI	Provide the customer login URI for API authentication.
*User Name	Enter the Username of the Sectigo portal to communicate with the CA.
*Password	Enter the Password of the Sectigo portal to communicate with the CA.

Fields	Description
*Organization Id	Enter the organization id used for the certificate lifecycle action. (You will find it in the Organization tab of the Sectigo portal)
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click **Fetch Certificate Types**

The certificate types that are assigned to the configured user which will be used during certificate enrollment, policy creation, through out the product.

8. Update the following details in the **Advanced Settings** section as described in the table.

Advanced Settings

Poll after CSR submission ⓘ

* Retry Count ⓘ

* Retry Frequency seconds ⓘ

Advanced Settings - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
Poll after CSR Submission	A check box field when selected will fetch the certificated immediately after CSR Submission on enrollment, renew, and reissue of certificate with the retry count and retry frequency as described below.
*Retry Count	The number of times the polling will take place after CSR submission. Enter a value between 1 and 10.
*Retry Frequency	The duration of the polling. enter the value between 1 and 30seconds
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

9. Click **Fetch Custom Attributes**.


The attributes available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority along with the CA and profile names. A pop-up message is displayed as **CA and profiles fetched**.

10. Click **Save**.

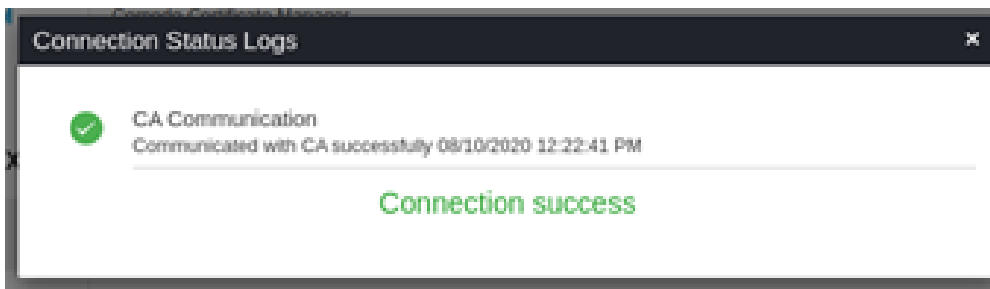
The created Sectigo configuration settings will be added. The pop-up message is displayed as **<CA_name> Settings Added**.

Validating Sectigo CA

Once the Sectigo settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Sectigo is properly configured.

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Sectigo**.
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Symantec CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Symantec CA](#)
- [Validating Symantec](#)


Before you begin

The prerequisites for configuring a Symantec account in AppViewX are as follows:

- A Symantec client certificate for a user having the necessary access for enrolling the certificates and other Certificate Lifecycle Management(CLM) operations.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Symantec users should be associated with the role "**w=VICE2 web services application**".
- Required organization status should be "valid".
- If the EV certificate type is enabled, then the EV status of the organization should be "Yes".
- The required domain should be registered with the organization.

- The required certificate types should be enabled with the required values in the portal.
- Unit values should be available for the required certificate type.

Configuring Symantec CA

1. Go to  (Menu) > SIGN+ > ADMINISTRATION > Certificate Authority.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Symantec**.
The **Symantec** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The **Symantec** configuration page is displayed.

[< Symantec](#)

General Information

* Name

* Purpose/Usage ⓘ

Proxy Required

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)

CA Configuration

* Certificate and Key ⓘ

* URL

* Jurisdiction Hash


* First Name

* Last Name

* Email Address


4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name must not start with special characters. </div>
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, Server and Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Symantec CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Certificate and Key	Client authentication certificate for API communication. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Must be a valid <.p12> or <.pfx> file. </div>
*URL	Symantec URL used for API communications. For example, https://certmanager-webservices.websecurity.symantec.com/vswebservices/
*Jurisdiction hash	Jurisdiction hash of the Symantec account. Available in the top right corner of the Symantec portal.
*First name	First name of the user.
*Last name	Last name of the user.

Fields	Description
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Click **Save**.

Validating Symantec

Once the Symantec settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Symantec is properly configured.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.

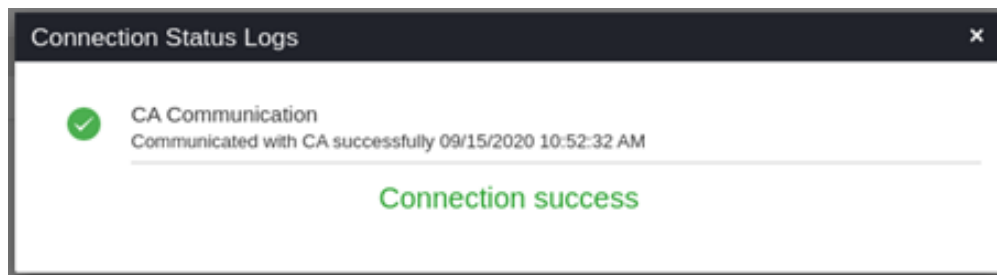
2. From the displayed CA, select **Symantec**.

The **Symantec** home page is displayed.

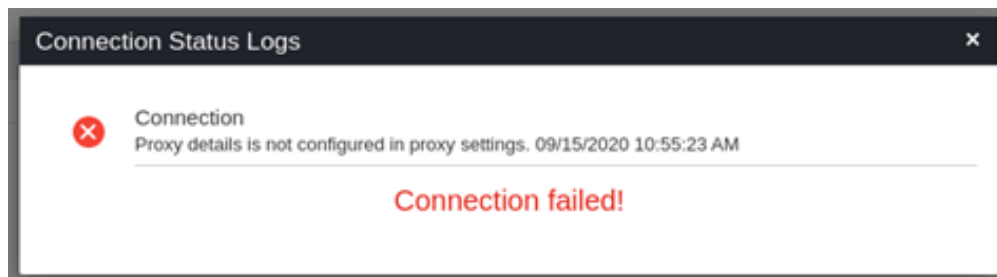
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

Success Scenario



Failed Scenario



Trustwave CA


- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Trustwave CA](#)
- [Validating Trustwave](#)

Before you Begin


The prerequisites for configuring Trustwave CA account in AppViewX are as follows:


- Trustwave API URL. Ex: <https://testapi.ssl.trustwave.com/3.0/>
- Reachability from AppViewX southbound to Trustwave API URL via proxy or direct internet connection
- Valid credentials for communicating to Trustwave CA via API
- Reseller id
- Account details provided in Trustwave account such as Organization Name, Email address, Organization Address, City, State, Zip code, Country, Phone number
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.


Configuring Trustwave CA


1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Trustwave**.
The **Trustwave** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** button or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.
The Trustwave CA details page is displayed.
4. Configure the **General Information** details as follows:

General Information

* CA Account name 

* Purpose/Usage 

Proxy Required 

Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent) 

General Information - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*CA Account name	Provide an account name for the CA setting.
*Purpose/Usage	Choose the certificate categories that will be managed by this setting. Possible certificate categories could be: a. Server b. Code Signing
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy .
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Choose the appropriate Data Center .
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Configure the **CA Configuration** with information you want to configure:

CA Configuration

* API URL ⓘ

* User Name ⓘ

* Password ⓘ

* Reseller ID ⓘ

CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*API URL	The Trustwave API URL to communicate. E.g.: https://testapi.ssl.trustwave.com/3.0/
*Username	The username for API authentication.
*Password	The password for API authentication.
*Reseller ID	The Reseller Id for the account.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Configure the **Account Details** with information you want to configure:

Account Details

* Name

* Email Address

* Address

* City

* State

* Zip Code

* Country

* Phone Number


CA Configuration - Field Description Table

Fields	Description
*Name	The Organization name given in the Trustwave account.
*Email Address	The Administrator or organization email address given in the Trustwave account.
*Address	The Organization Address given in the Trustwave account.
*City	The city name given in the Trustwave account.
*State	The state name given in the Trustwave account.
*Zip code	The zip code given in the Trustwave account.
*Country	The country code given in the Trustwave account. E.g.: US.
*Phone number	The phone number given in the Trustwave account.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click **Save**.

Validating Trustwave

Once the Trustwave settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Trustwave is properly configured.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Authority**.
2. From the displayed CA, select **Trustwave**.
3. In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

Certificate Group


Before you Begin

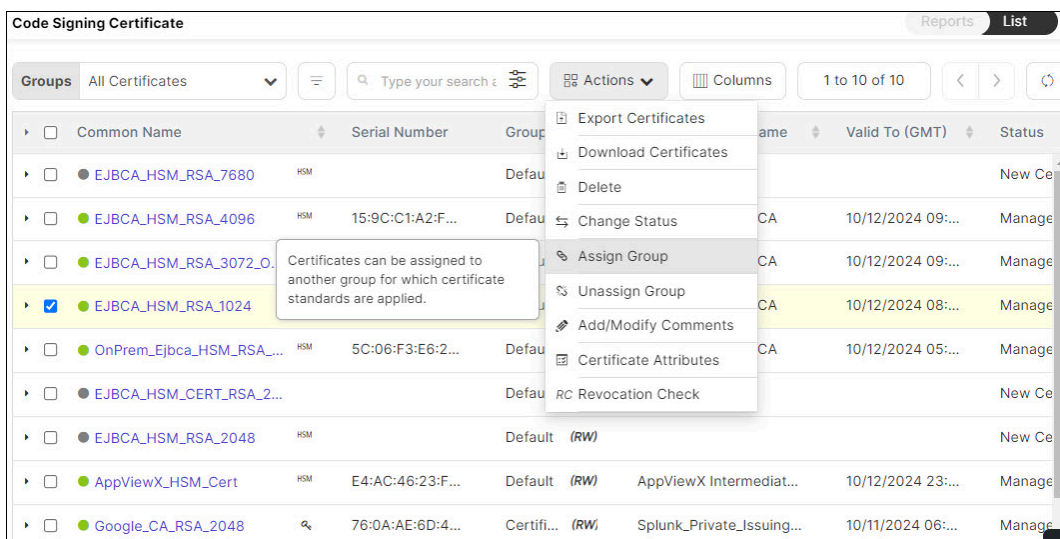
Know the following before starting the **Certificate Groups** configuration:

- **Certificate Groups** are used to categorize the certificates according to various **business units**.
- In some organizations, **Certificate Groups** are also used to assign access permissions. Only privileged users (Inherits from Resource > User Group) can view the respective **Certificate Groups**.
- Users should be assigned to a **Role** (Inherited from Role > User Group) that has access to perform the below actions,
 - View a group
 - Assign a group
 - Unassign a group
- With these actions, users can assign a group during **Certificate Discovery** to avoid movement of certificates post-discovery.
- Along with the view, assign, and unassign options, administrators should be assigned to a **Role** that has access for additional actions,
 - Create/modify a group
 - Delete a group
 - Edit Default group
- [Assign Certificate to a Group](#)
- [Create a Group](#)
- [Modify a Group](#)

- Delete a Group
- Unassign Certificate from a Group

Assign Certificate to a Group

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+**.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE INVENTORY**, select **Code Signing**.
The **Code Signing Certificate** inventory is displayed.
3. Click **List** button on upper right of the Code Signing Certificate inventory screen.
4. Select the check box against the certificate(s) you want to assign to a group.
5. Click **Actions** drop-down and select the **Assign Group** option from the drop-down.



The screenshot shows the 'Code Signing Certificate' inventory interface. The 'Actions' dropdown menu is open, and the 'Assign Group' option is highlighted. A tooltip is displayed over the selected certificate, indicating that certificates can be assigned to another group for which certificate standards are applied.

Common Name	Serial Number	Group	Name	Valid To (GMT)	Status
<input type="checkbox"/> EJBCA_HSM_RSA_7680	HSM	Default			New Ce
<input type="checkbox"/> EJBCA_HSM_RSA_4096	HSM	15:9C:C1:A2:F...	CA	10/12/2024 09:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> EJBCA_HSM_RSA_3072_0...			CA	10/12/2024 09:...	Manage
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EJBCA_HSM_RSA_1024			CA	10/12/2024 08:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> OnPrem_Ejbca_HSM_RSA_...	HSM	5C:06:F3:E6:2...	CA	10/12/2024 05:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> EJBCA_HSM_CERT_RSA_2...		Default			New Ce
<input type="checkbox"/> EJBCA_HSM_RSA_2048	HSM	Default (RW)			New Ce
<input type="checkbox"/> AppViewX_HSM_Cert	HSM	Default (RW)	AppViewX Intermediat...	10/12/2024 23:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> Google_CA_RSA_2048		Certifi...	Splunk_Private_Issuing...	10/11/2024 06:...	Manage

6. The **Assign to Group** pop-up is displayed. Select the **Group** from the list.
7. Click **Assign** button to move the certificate(s) to the selected **Group**.
8. Click **Groups** drop-down and select your **Group** from the drop-down.

Code Signing Certificate Reports List

Groups All Certificates 10

Search... 10

Default RW 10

Certificate-Gateway RW 1

Serial Number	Group	Issuer Common Name	Valid To (GMT)	Status
HSM	Default (RW)			New Ce
HSM 15:9C:C1:A2:F...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 09:...	Manage
HSM 31:02:F2:D4:4...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 09:...	Manage
HSM 60:8E:F3:C0:0...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 08:...	Manage
HSM 5C:06:F3:E6:2...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 05:...	Manage
	Default (RW)			New Ce
	Default (RW)			New Ce
HSM E4:AC:46:23:F...	Default (RW)	AppViewX Intermediat...	10/12/2024 23:...	Manage
76:0A:AE:6D:4...	Certifi... (RW)	Splunk_Private_Issuing...	10/11/2024 06:...	Manage

9. You can view the certificate(s) assigned to the **Group**. The table provides certificate(s) details.

Code Signing Certificate Reports


Groups All Certificates

Search... Actions Columns 1 to 10 of 10

Serial Number	Group	Issuer Common Name	Valid To (GMT)
HSM	Default (RW)		
HSM 15:9C:C1:A2:F...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 09:...
HSM 31:02:F2:D4:4...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 09:...
HSM 60:8E:F3:C0:0...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 08:...
HSM 5C:06:F3:E6:2...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 05:...
	Default (RW)		
HSM	Default (RW)		
HSM E4:AC:46:23:F...	Default (RW)	AppViewX Intermediat...	10/12/2024 23:...
76:0A:AE:6D:4...	Certifi... (RW)	Splunk_Private_Issuing...	10/11/2024 06:...

Create a Group

Assign the user to a user group that (inherits from resource and role) have access to certificate group.

- Go to  (Menu) > SIGN+ > GROUPS & POLICIES > Groups.
The **Group** home page is displayed.
- SIGN+** is packaged with default certificate groups **Default** and **Certificate-Gateway**.
- Click **+ Create** button in the command bar to create a new group.

Group										
Q Search...						+ Create	Delete	1 to 2 of 2	<	>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Application ID	Server Certifi...	Client Certific...	Device Certifi...	Code Signing...	Policy Associated	App Pol	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Certificate-Gateway (RW)			0	0	0	0	Certificate-Gateway		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default (RW)	Default Group		222	0	0	0	Default		

Field Description for Group Details

Fields	Description
Select Group Hierarchy	Select the parent group to which the new group should be associated
Group Name	Enter a unique name for the new group
Application ID	Provide organization ID (if any) to associate with the new group
Description	Provide the purpose of the new group
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

4. Group Name is mandatory in the **Group Details** section. Provide the **Group Name** to create a new group.

Group Details

* Select Group Hierarchy ⓘ

* Group Name ⓘ

Application ID ⓘ

Description

Field Description for Other Details

Fields	Description
Contact Name	Provide contact person to whom changes should be intimated
Line of Business Name	Provide the name of the business unit
Email	Provide contact mail address

Fields	Description
Environment Name	Provide environment name
Phone Number	Provide a phone number for contact
Inventory Number	Provide inventory number
Cost Center/ Hierarchy	Provide Cost Center code/ label
Push Certificate Automatically	By enabling the check box, the renewed/ reissued certificates in this group are automatically associated with their device
Renew Automatically	Turn On to automatically renew the certificate belongs to this group.
Associated Policy	Displays the policy associated with this group.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. The fields in the **Other Details** section are used based on the organization's needs.

Other details

Contact Name

Line of Business Name

Email

Environment Name

Phone Number

Inventory Number

Cost Center/Hierarchy

Push Certificate Automatically ⓘ

Renew Automatically ⓘ

* Associated Policy ▼

6. Click **Create** button to create the group.

Users can view the group only if it is associated with the **Resource** of their **User Group**. To associate the **Group** with a **Resource**, click the **Update Group and Configure the Resources for User Access** button instead of the **Create** button. This will create the group and navigate to **Resources**. Refer to the [Create a Resource](#) section of the CERT Guide to configure user access.

7. The newly created **Group** is added to the Group inventory. Click the **Name** (Group name) to view the group details.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Application ID	Server Certifi...	Client Certific...	Device Certifi...	Code Signing...	Policy Associ...	App Polic
<input type="checkbox"/>	Certificate-Gateway (RW)			0	0	0	0	Certificate-Gat...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default (RW)	Default Group		222	0	0	0	Default	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DemoAppViewX (RW)			0	0	0	0	Default	

8. Post certificate discovery, you can view the count of certificates Code Signing associated with this group.
9. Click the count in the Server Certificates column to view the certificates.

Modify a Group

Assign the user to a user group that (Inherits from resource and role) have access to the certificate group.

1. Go to  (Menu) > SIGN+ > GROUPS & POLICIES > Groups.

The **Group** home page is displayed.

2. Click **Name** (Group name) to view the group details.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Application ID	Server Certifi...	Client Certific...	Device Certifi...	Code Signing...	Policy Associ...	App Polic
<input type="checkbox"/>	Certificate-Gateway (RW)			0	0	0	0	Certificate-Gat...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default (RW)	Default Group		217	0	0	0	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	DemoAppViewX (RW)			5	0	0	0	Default	

3. Modify required fields in the group and then, click **Update**. Field descriptions are available in [Create a Group](#) section.
4. The changes are updated and a confirmation message displays.


Group Group updated									
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Application ID	Server Certifi...	Client Certific...	Device Certifi...	Code Signing...	Policy Associ...	App Polic
<input type="checkbox"/>	Certificate-Gateway (RW)			0	0	0	0	Certificate-Gat...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default (RW)	Default Group		217	0	0	0	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	DemoAppViewX (RW)			5	0	0	0	Default	

Delete a Group

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **Groups**.

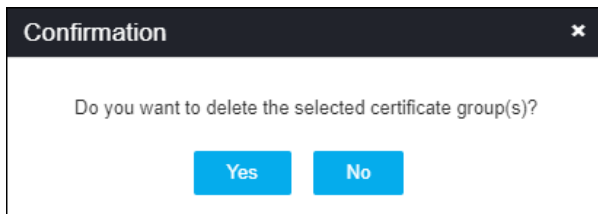
The **Group** home page is displayed.

2. In the group inventory, select the check box against the group you want to delete.

3. Click  (**Delete**) icon in the command bar to delete the Group.

Group									
<input type="text" value="Search..."/> + Create Delete 1 to 3 of 3 < > ↻									
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Description	Application ID	Server Certi...	Client Certifi...	Device Certi...	Code Signin...	Policy Asso...	App Policy ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	Certificate-Gateway	(RW)		0	0	0	0	Certificate-G...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default	(RW)	Default Group	217	0	0	0	Default	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DemoAppViewX	(RW)		5	0	0	0	Default	


4. A confirmation pop-up is displayed.



5. Click **Yes** to proceed.

The group is deleted and a confirmation message displays.

Unassign Certificate from a Group

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+**.
2. Under the **CERTIFICATE INVENTORY**, select **Code Signing**.
The **Code Signing Certificate** inventory is displayed.
3. Click **List** button on the upper right of the Code Signing Certificate inventory screen.
4. Click **Groups** drop-down and select a **Group** from the drop-down.

Code Signing Certificate Reports List

Groups All Certificates 10

Search... Type your search Actions Columns 1 to 10 of 10

Serial Number	Group	Issuer Common Name	Valid To (GMT)	Status
HSM	Default (RW)			New Ce
HSM 15:9C:C1:A2:F...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 09:...	Manage
HSM 31:02:F2:D4:4...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 09:...	Manage
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HSM 60:8E:F3:C0:0...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 08:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM 5C:06:F3:E6:2...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 05:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM	Default (RW)			New Ce
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM	Default (RW)			New Ce
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM E4:AC:46:23:F...	Default (RW)	AppViewX Intermediat...	10/12/2024 23:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM 76:0A:AE:6D:4...	Certifi... (RW)	Splunk_Private_Issuing...	10/11/2024 06:...	Manage

5. Select the check box against the certificate you want to unassign from the group.

6. Click **Actions** drop-down and select the **Unassign Group** option from the drop-down.

Code Signing Certificate Reports List

Groups All Certificates 10

Search... Type your search Actions Columns 1 to 10 of 10

Serial Number	Group	Issuer Common Name	Valid To (GMT)	Status
HSM	Default (RW)			New Ce
HSM 15:9C:C1:A2:F...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 09:...	Manage
HSM 31:02:F2:D4:4...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 09:...	Manage
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HSM 60:8E:F3:C0:0...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 08:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM 5C:06:F3:E6:2...	Default (RW)	DEMO ISTIO SUB CA	10/12/2024 05:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM	Default (RW)			New Ce
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM	Default (RW)			New Ce
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM E4:AC:46:23:F...	Default (RW)	AppViewX Intermediat...	10/12/2024 23:...	Manage
<input type="checkbox"/> HSM 76:0A:AE:6D:4...	Certifi... (RW)	Splunk_Private_Issuing...	10/11/2024 06:...	Manage

Export Certificates
Download Certificates
Delete
Change Status
Assign Group
Unassign Group
Add/Modify Comments
Certificate Attributes
OC Revocation Check

Move certificate(s) to Default group .

7. The certificate is unassigned from your **Group** and automatically assigned to the **Default Group**.

- Certificates should always be assigned to a group to ensure compliance with the policy.
- When a certificate is unassigned from a group, it will automatically be assigned to the Default Group, ensuring compliance with the Default Policy.

CA Policy

You can enforce your organization standards by configuring a **CA Policy** in **SIGN+**. A CA policy will compare the attributes of discovered certificates against the certificate policy to ensure they are compliant. If the certificate attribute deviates, the certificate is marked non-compliant and this is notified

to the users. Users can request the Certificate Authority for a new certificate (in-line to their organization standards).

Prerequisites for configuring a CA policy

- Certificate group(s) must be available to map the policy to them.
- CA accounts (settings) for which a policy will be created must be available.
- Key algorithm, encryption type must be available under the CA accounts.
- AppViewX permission required (**Accounts > Roles** - *Click here to check Accounts management*)

While working with policy

- Go to **SIGN+ > Policy > View Policy** - To view the policy.
- Go to **SIGN+ > Policy > Add / Modify** - To create/ modify the policy.
- [Configuring Policy Details](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Amazon CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Amazon Private CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Digicert CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for EJBCA CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Entrust CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Entrust MPKI CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GlobalSign CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GlobalSign MSSL CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GoDaddy CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Google CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for HashiCorp Vault CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for HydrantID CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Let's Encrypt CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Microsoft Enterprise CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Microsoft Standalone CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Nexus CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for OpenTrust CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Sectigo CA](#)

- [Configuring Policy for Symantec CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Trustwave CA](#)

Configuring Policy Details

1. Go to  (Menu) > SIGN+ > GROUPS & POLICIES > CA Policy.

The **CA Policy** page is displayed.


CA Policy			
<input type="text" value="Search..."/>			1 to 2 of 2
<input type="checkbox"/>	Policy Name	Description	Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	Certificate-Gateway	A system policy assigned to enable the co...	Suggestive
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default	Default policy of AppViewX to provide acc...	Strict



Note: SIGN+ is packaged with the following: default policies **Default** and **Certificate-Gateway**.

2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy :: Create** page is displayed.
3. Enter/Select the **Policy Details**.

Field description for Policy Details

Fields	Description
*Policy name	Enter a unique name for the CA policy. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  Note: No special characters other than ., -, and _ are allowed. The policy name should not start with special characters. </div>
Description	Enter a description of the policy.
*Policy Enforcement Type	Select Strict (default) or Suggestive . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Strict - Enforces standards defined in the policy where a user cannot modify any parameters. • Suggestive - Suggests policy parameters. A user can modify to the suggested values if required.

Fields	Description
Certificate Requests Need Approval	When enabled, this feature will enforce peer approval process for any requests made for creation/renewal/regeneration/reissue or revocation of certificates. Peer approval for requests is defined in the approval workflow.
Enable Access to Private Key	When enabled, allows the user to download private keys from the holistic view.
Enable certificate push-bind access for a read-only user	Enabling this feature will allow a user from a read-only user group to perform certificate push, bind, and rollback operations from the holistic view.
Validate issuer and root certificate for compliance	Enabling this option will validate if the issuer and root of a certificate are also compliant with the standards defined in the policy.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	



Note: You can configure the **Policy Details** section based on your organization's standards.

4. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.

Group selection

Add as Favorites

Select all
 All Selected Unselected Count: 14

SopraGr
 Networking
 SopraGrp
 CryptoOps
 EndUserGroup

Favorites 🗑️

No records found


Note: This policy applies to all certificates for the selected groups.

5. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

Configuring Policy for Amazon CA

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** from the top-right of the page.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** pane in the left, select **Amazon**.

Field description for Amazon CA Details

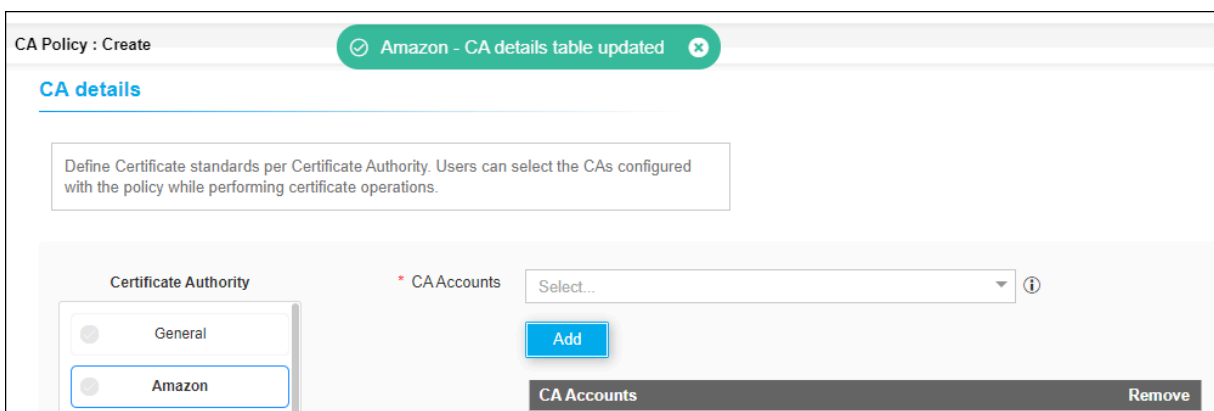
Fields	Description
*CA Accounts	The Amazon CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*: Mandatory fields	

- From the **CA Accounts** dropdown list., select the required CA account.



- Click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.



- From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).


The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.


8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.

The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

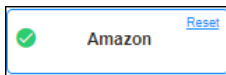
9. Enter/Select the **Certificate Parameters**

Field description for certificate parameters

Fields	Description
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate . <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate .

Fields	Description
	 Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Amazon** option to indicate that the details are successfully stored.



11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.




Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Amazon Private CA

Prerequisites:


- You must configure the CA setting with Amazon Private CA credentials.
- You must have validated and fetched the Amazon Intermediate CAs along with the issuer region details in the CA settings page.

- Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy :: Create** page is displayed.

3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Amazon Private CA**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Amazon Private CA.
5. Enter/Select the policy details for Amazon Private CA.

Field description to create CA policy for Amazon Private CA


Field	Description					
*CA Accounts	From the dropdown list, select the certificate authority account.					
*Issuer Region	From the dropdown list, select the issuer region.					
*Issuer Name	From the dropdown list, select the issuer name.					
*Validity	<p>In the Days, Month, and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate.</p> <p>You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/ years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.</p>					
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the key types are listed with their corresponding bit length. You can select one or more than one bit length - key type pair from the dropdown list.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's key type and bit length will be compared against the selected bit length - key type(s) to check for compliance with the policy.</p> <p>The selected bit length - key type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as new, renew, regenerate. Amazon Private CA supports the following bit type and length:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Type</th> <th>Length</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">RSA</td> <td>2048</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4096</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Type	Length	RSA	2048	4096
Type	Length					
RSA	2048					
	4096					


Field	Description	
	Type	Length
	EC	prime256v1 sec384r1
*Hash Function	From the dropdown list, select one or more than one supported Hash Function . The supported hash functions are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SHA256 • SHA384 • SHA512 	
*Signature Algorithm	From the dropdown list, select the required signature algorithm. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: The issuer will print the issuer algorithm that the users select from the Signature Algorithm in this field. </div>	
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>		

6. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .

Field	Description
	<div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>Enter the email address of the organization unit.</p>

Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

7. Click **Save CA Details**.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Amazon Private CA** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.

8. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.

9. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

10. Click **Create Policy**.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Digicert CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.

The **CA Policy** page is displayed.

2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.

The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.

3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **DigiCert**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to DigiCert.
5. Enter/Select the policy details for DigiCert.

Field description to create CA policy for DigiCert

Field	Description
* CA Account	The GlobalSign CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Division	Select the division from the dropdown list.
* Certificate Type	Certificate types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more certificate types from the list to create the policy.
* Validity	Enter a validity period for the certificate. The available options are: Days - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Month - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Year - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. In the **Vendor Specific Details** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table

Field	Description
* Server Type	Select the server type from the dropdown list.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click **Add**.

The CA details are added to the table below the **Add** button and a confirmation message is displayed.




Note: You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.


CA Accounts	Division	Certificate Type	validity	Edit	Remove
Digicert	private-only	Private SSL Plus	view		
Digicert	public-only	SSL Plus	view		
Digicert	AppViewX In c.	Private SSL Multi Domain	view		

- Select the **Bit Length -Key Type**, **ECDSA curve**, and the **Hash Function**.
- Based on your organization's policies and standards, enter/select values for the **Certificate Parameters**.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate .

Field	Description
	<div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>Enter the email address of the organization unit.</p>


Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **DigiCert** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.




11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.

 **Note:** A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for EJBCA CA



- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **EJBCA**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to EJBCA.
- In the **Vendor Specific Details** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table.

Field descriptions for the vendor-specific details

Field	Description
End entity user name	Enter the name of the end entity user.
*End entity Profile name	Enter the name of the end entity profile.
*Issuer Common Name	Enter the common user name.
*Certificate Profile Name	Enter a certificate profile name.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Click **Add** .
The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

CA Accounts	Remove
EJBCA	
MSG-EJBCA-SAAS-CA	

- From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).
The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key


type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.


The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

9. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

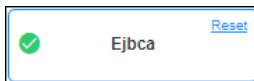
Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate . <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	Enter the organization name. The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is

Field	Description
	enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Organization Unit	Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Locality	Enter the locality name. The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
State	Enter the state. The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Country code	Enter the country code. The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .

Field	Description
	 Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **EJBCA** to indicate the details are successfully stored.



11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.

12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Entrust CA

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.

The **CA Policy** page is displayed.

2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.

The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.

3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Entrust**.

The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Entrust.

5. Enter/Select the CA details for Entrust.

Field Description for CA Details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The Entrust CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Certificate Type	The Certificate Types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more certificate types from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	In the Days, Month, and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	



6. In the **Vendor Specific Details** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table:

Field	Description
Additional Emails	Enter the valid email address in the field.

7. Click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **the Remove** option to delete the configuration.

CA Accounts	Certificate Type	validity	Edit	Remove
entrust	Standard UC MultiDomain Wildcard Advantage EV	view		

8. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).

The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key


type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.


9. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.

The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

10. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Common Name	<p>Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p>

Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
State	Enter the state. The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Country code	Enter the country code. The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

11. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration.

A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Entrust** option to indicate that the details are successfully stored.


12. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
13. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

14. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Entrust MPKI CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Entrust MPKI**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Amazon Private CA.
5. Enter/Select the policy details for Entrust MPKI.


Field Description for CA Details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	Select a CA account from the list to create the policy. The selected CA account will be listed in the CA Accounts table.
*Bit Length - Key Type	From the dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s). The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .


Field	Description
*Hash Function	<p>From the dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

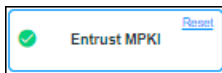
Field	Description
Host name	<p>Enter the host name.</p> <p>The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)</p>
*Allowed Domain Names	<p>Enter only the white-listed domain names.</p> <p>Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.</p>
Common Name	<p>Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is</p>

Field	Description
	enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Organization Unit	Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Locality	Enter the locality name. The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
State	Enter the state. The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Country code	Enter the country code. The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .

Field	Description
	 Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

7. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Entrust MPKI** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.



8. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.

9. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

10. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for GlobalSign CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.

The **CA Policy** page is displayed.

2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **EJBCA**.

The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to EJBCA.

5. In the **Vendor Specific Details** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table.

Field	Description
*Incorporating Agency Reg. No	Enter the agency registration number.
*Designation	Enter the designation.
*Business Category	Select the business category from the dropdown list.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

7. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).

The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.


8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.


The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

9. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)

Field	Description
*Allowed Domain Names	<p>Enter only the white-listed domain names.</p> <p>Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.</p>
Common Name	<p>Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div> <p>.</p>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p>

Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Country code	Enter the country code. The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **GlobalSign** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.

11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.

12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.




Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

- Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for GlobalSign MSSL CA

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** to configure a GlobalSign MSSL based policy.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **GlobalSign MSSL**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to GlobalSign MSSL.
- Enter/Select the CA details.

Field Description for CA Details

Field	Description
* CA Accounts	The GlobalSign MSSL CA accounts configured on the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Product Type	All Managed SSL Product Types require that the Organization's information and at least one Domain be registered in the Managed SSL account prior to ordering.
* Signature Algorithm	Select the signature algorithm from the drop-down list.
* MSSL Profile Allowed Domain Name	Select the MSSL Profile Allowed Domain Name from the drop-down list.

Field	Description
* Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

The screenshot displays the 'Add' configuration screen for CA Accounts. At the top, there is a blue 'Add' button. Below it is a table with the following structure:

CA Accounts	Product Type	View	Edit	Remove
test_mssl_1	Extended MSSL	view		

Below the table are two mandatory dropdown menus:

- * Bit Length - Key Type:** This menu contains eight options: 2048 - RSA, 3072 - RSA, 4096 - RSA, 7680 - RSA, 8192 - RSA, 256 - EC, 384 - EC, and a 'Clear' button. An information icon is present to the right.
- * ECDSA curve:** This menu contains five options: brainpoolP256r1, secp256k1, secp256r1 / prime256v1 / P-256, brainpoolP384r1, and secp384r1 / P-384. A 'Clear' button and an information icon are also present.

You can use **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

7. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).


The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.


8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.

The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New, Renew, Regenerate**.

9. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate . <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div>
Organization	Enter the organization name. The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Organization Unit	Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for

Field	Description
	compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>Enter the email address of the organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

10. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration.
A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **GlobalSign MSSL** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.
11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA

Before You Begin: The prerequisites for configuring the policy are as follows:

- Certificate group(s) must be available to map the policy to them
- CA accounts (settings) must be available to which the policy is going to be created
- AppViewX permission required (**Accounts > Roles** - [Click here to check Accounts management](#))

To configure policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA:

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.

The **CA Policy** page is displayed.

SIGN+ is packaged with the following default policies: **Default** and **Certificate-Gateway**.



Note: The **Default** CA Policy will have the **GlobalSign Atlas CA** details.

2. Click **+ Create** to configure GlobalSign Atlas custom policy.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **GlobalSign Atlas**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to GlobalSign Atlas.

5. Enter/Select the CA details.

Field description for CA details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The GlobalSign Atlas CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed here. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*Bit Length - Key Type	From the dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s). The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate .
*Hash Function	From the dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions. The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate .
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

The updated fields for the CA are displayed on the right.


6. Click **Add**.


The CA details are saved in the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use the **Edit** (pencil) option in the table to modify the configuration and the **Remove** (bin) option to delete the configuration.

7. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate . <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	Enter the organization name. The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Organization Unit	Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Locality	Enter the locality name.

Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
State	Enter the state. The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Country code	Enter the country code. The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

8. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **GlobalSign MSSL** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.


9. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
10. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

11. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for GoDaddy CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **GoDaddy**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to GoDaddy.
5. Enter/Select the CA details.

Field description for CA details

Field	Description
* CA Account	The GoDaddy CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Certificate Type	The Certificate Types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more Certificate Type from the list to create the policy.
* Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate.

Field	Description
	You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).

The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

7. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.

The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

8. Click **Add**.


The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.


You can use **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

9. Enter/Select the certificate parameters.

Field description for certificate parameters

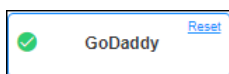
Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.

Field	Description
Common Name	<p>Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p>

Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **GoDaddy** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.



11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.


12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

- Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Google CA

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Google**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Google.
- Enter/Select the CA details.

Field description for CA details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The Google CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Issuer Location	The issuer locations corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select an issuer location from the list to create the policy.
*Issuer Name	The issuer names corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select an issuer name from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*Bit Length - Key Type	From the dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s). The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The

Field	Description
	Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
*Hash Function	From the dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions. The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Enter/Select the certificate parameters.

For the Policy Enforcement Type = **Strict**

Certificate parameters

Compare the discovered certificate with the below to identify if it is compliant. Additionally, below will also be enforced on a certificate request.

* Host Name ⓘ

* Allowed Domain Names ⓘ

Common Name ⓘ

Organization ⓘ

Organization Unit ⓘ

Locality ⓘ

State ⓘ

Country code ⓘ

Email ⓘ

Subject Alternative Name ⓘ

[Save CA Details](#)

CA Accounts	Issuer Location	View	Edit	Remove
No records added...				

For the Policy Enforcement Type = **Suggestive**

Certificate parameters

Compare the discovered certificate with the below to identify if it is compliant. Additionally, below will also be enforced on a certificate request.



Host Name	<input type="text"/>	i
Allowed Domain Names	<input type="text" value="Type domain name and press enter"/>	i
Blocked Domain Names	<input type="text" value="Type domain name and press enter"/>	i
Common Name	<input type="text"/>	i
Organization	<input type="text" value="Example: AppViewX"/>	i
Organization Unit	<input type="text" value="Example: Your org unit"/>	i
Locality	<input type="text" value="Example: Seattle"/>	i
State	<input type="text" value="Example: Washington"/>	i
Country code	<input type="text" value="Example: Search your country and select country code."/>	i
Email	<input type="text" value="Example: admin@email.com , user123@email.com ."/>	i
Subject Alternative Name	<input type="text"/>	i

[Save CA Details](#)


CA Accounts	Issuer Location	View	Edit	Remove
No records added...				

Field description for certificate Parameters





Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.

Field	Description
Hostname	<p>This text field is displayed if the Policy Enforcement Type = Strict or Suggestive.</p> <p>Enter the unique name or label for the host.</p> <p>The field is mandatory only when the Policy Enforcement Type = Strict.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px;">  Note: The hostname should not start or end with a dot. </div>
Allowed Domain Name	<p>This text field is displayed if the Policy Enforcement Type = Strict or Suggestive.</p> <p>The field is mandatory only when the Policy Enforcement Type = Strict.</p> <p>Enter the valid domain name (two parts separated by a dot, such as example.com)</p> <p>.</p>
Blocked Domain Name	<p>This text field is displayed only if the Policy Enforcement Type = Suggestive</p> <p>Enter the domain names (two parts separated by a dot, such as example.com) that need to be blocked</p> <p>.</p>
Common Name	<p>Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>

Field	Description
	.
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>

Field	Description
Email	<p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN)</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@)</p> </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

CA Accounts	Issuer Location	Issuer Name	validity	Edit	Remove
Google CA	us-east1	AppViewX-Enterprise-Pvt-Root-CA-1023	view		
Google CA 1	us-central1	AppViewX-Enterprise-Pvt-Root-CA-1029	view		

7. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Google** to indicate the details are successfully stored.

8. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.

9. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

- Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for HashiCorp Vault CA

Before You Begin

- Certificate Group(s) must be available to map the Policy to them.
- CA accounts (settings) must be available to which the policy is going to be created.
- Key Algorithm, Encryption Type must be available under the CA accounts.
- AppViewX permission required (Accounts > Roles - [Click here to check Accounts management](#)).

To configure a Hashicorp Vault CA policy:

- Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.

The **CA Policy** page is displayed with a list of policies and their associated groups.



Note: A **Default** policy will always be present in the list. Most of the roles are mapped to this policy. This policy can be used for any of the configured CAs.







- To create a custom policy, click **+Create** from the top-right corner of the **CA Policy** page.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **HashicorpVault**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to HashicorpVault.
- Enter/Select the CA details.

Field Description for CA Details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Secret Engine	The single-select dropdown contains all the secret engines associated with the account. In a secret engine, a role describes an identity with a set of permissions, groups, or policies you want to attach to a user of the secret engine. User identity is often mapped to a specific role. Hence, a single secret engine needs to be selected to populate role (below) specific to it.
*Role	The dropdown list contains all the roles mapped to the secret engine.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Click **Add**.

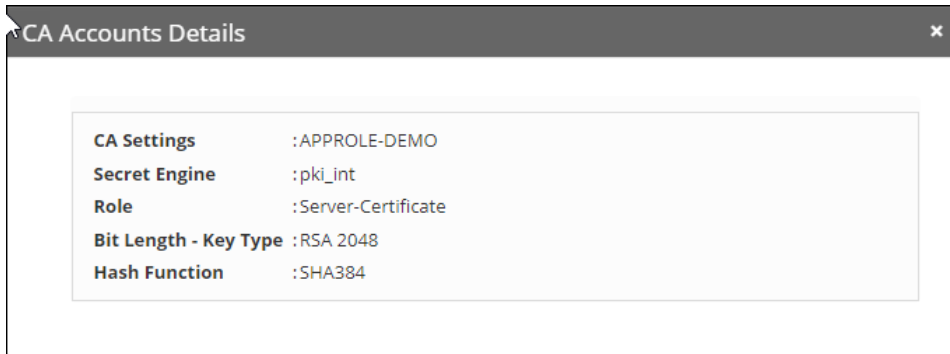
The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

CA Settings	Secret Engine	Role	View	Edit	Remove
APPROLE-DEMO	pki_int	Server-Certificate	View		
APPROLE-DEMO	pki_int	certificate-role	View		
AWS_TEST	pki_int	code-sign-test	View		

Multiple values can be configured based on the available CA settings and secret engines with different bit length - key type and hash function. The supported values include:


- **Key Type:** RSA, EC
- **Bit Length:**
 - *RSA key type:* 2048 (default), 3072, or 4096
 - *EC key type:* 224, 256 (default), 384, or 521
- **Hash Function:** SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512

The CA Details table has options to **View**, **Edit**, and **Delete**.




- a. To view the CA details, click the View link in the View column - The CA account details are displayed in a pop-up window with the *Bit Length - Key Type* and *Hash Function*.
 - b. To update the CA details, select the edit icon in the Edit column.
 - c. To delete the CA details, select the delete icon.
7. Enter/Select the certificate parameters.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)

Field	Description
	.
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>Enter the email address of the organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>

Field	Description
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

8. Click **Save CA Details**.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Hashicorp Vault** option to indicate that the details are successfully saved.

9. In the **Group Selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy. Refer to the **Certificate Group** section to add/update groups.

10. Under the **Compliance Check** section, enable the **Perform Compliance Check** option to perform an immediate compliance check.

11. Click **Create Policy** button.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for HydrantID CA

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.

The **CA Policy** page is displayed.

2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.

The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.

3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **HydrantID**.

The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to HydrantID.

5. Enter/Select the CA details.

Field Description for CA Details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The HydrantID CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed here. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*HydrantID Policy	Policies associated with the account will be displayed here. Select a policy from the dropdown (single select).
*Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

7. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).


The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.


8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.

The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

9. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate . <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	Enter the organization name. The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Organization Unit	Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Locality	Enter the locality name.

Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
State	Enter the state. The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Country code	Enter the country code. The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration.

A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **HydrantID** CA option to indicate that the details are successfully stored.


11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Let's Encrypt CA

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.
3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **LetsEncrypt**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to LetsEncrypt.
5. Enter/Select the CA details.

Field Description for CA Details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The Let's Encrypt CA accounts configured in CA settings are listed here. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

7. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).


The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.


8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.

The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

9. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.**Field description for certificate parameters**

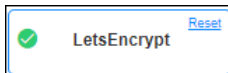
Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate .

Field	Description
	 Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>Enter the email address of the organization unit.</p>


Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration.

A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **LetsEncrypt** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.




11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.

 **Note:** A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Microsoft Enterprise CA

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Microsoft Enterprise**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Microsoft Enterprise.
- Enter/Select the CA details.



Field Description for CA Details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The Microsoft Enterprise CA accounts configured in the CA settings are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*MS Template List	The MS templates configured for the selected CA account are listed. Select MS template(s) from the list to associate with the policy.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use **the Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

CA Accounts	MS Template List	Edit	Remove
avxdevlab-AVXENTCA-CA	Administrator EFS EFSRecovery		

- From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).


The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.


The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

9. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

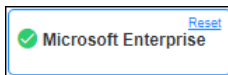
Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate . <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	Enter the organization name.

Field	Description
	<p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>Enter the email address of the organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>

Field	Description
	 Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration.

A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Microsoft Enterprise** to indicate the details are successfully stored.



11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.

12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Microsoft Standalone CA

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.

The **CA Policy** page is displayed.

2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Microsoft Standalone**.

The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Microsoft Standalone.

5. Enter/Select the CA details.

Field description for CA Details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The Microsoft Standalone CA accounts configured in the CA settings are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

7. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).

The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.


8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.


The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

9. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)

Field	Description
*Allowed Domain Names	<p>Enter only the white-listed domain names.</p> <p>Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.</p>
Common Name	<p>Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div> <p>.</p>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p>

Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Country code	Enter the country code. The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration.

A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Microsoft Standalone** to indicate the details are successfully stored.

11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.

12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Nexus CA

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.

The **CA Policy** page is displayed.

2. Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.

The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.

3. Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

4. In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Nexus**.

The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Nexus.

5. Enter/Select the CA details.

Field Description for CA Details

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The Nexus CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/ months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Once the CA account and the validity fields are populated, a new section called **Vendor Specific Details** is enabled. Select the **Procedure** field from the drop-down list and click **Add** to save the CA details to the table. You can also use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

Select the details as follows:

- a. **Case 1** - Select **Server** check box, the procedures listed in the **Procedures** dropdown will be - Mapped to servers and default procedures.
- b. **Case 2** - Select **Client** check box, the procedures listed in the **Procedures** dropdown will be - mapped to client and default procedures.
- c. **Case 3** - Select **Server** and **Client** check box, the procedures listed in the **Procedures** dropdown will be - mapped to server, client, and default procedures.



Note: The procedures displayed in the dropdown should have the **cert type** appended in the value. For example: - *Procedure name_Server/client/default/Code-Signing*.

7. Click **Add**. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use **the Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

CA Settings	Certificate Type	Edit	Remove
Trustwave CA_Server	SecureTrust Organization Validation		
	SecureTrust OV Wildcard		

8. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).


The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New, Renew, Regenerate**.


9. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.

The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New, Renew, Regenerate**.

10. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

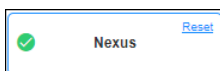
Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Host name	<p>Enter the host name.</p> <p>The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)</p>
*Allowed Domain Names	<p>Enter only the white-listed domain names.</p> <p>Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.</p>
Common Name	<p>Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>

Field	Description
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>Enter the email address of the organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

- Click **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration.

A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Nexus** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.



- From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.


- From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

- Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for OpenTrust CA

- Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **OpenTrust**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to OpenTrust.
- Enter/Select the CA details.

Field Description for CA Details

Field	Description
* CA Account	The OpenTrust CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Certificate Management Profile	Select the certificate management profile from the dropdown list.
* Zone	Select the zone from the dropdown list.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Enter/Select the **Profile Parameters**.

Field Description for profile parameters

Field	Description
*Common Name	Enter a common name for the policy.
Organizational Unit	Enter the organizational unit.
Organization	Enter the name of the organization.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

8. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).

The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New, Renew, Regenerate**.


9. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.


The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New, Renew, Regenerate**.

10. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.

Field	Description
Common Name	<p>Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div> <p>.</p>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p>

Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

- Click **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration.

A green tick mark displays in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **OpenTrust** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.

- From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
- From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.




Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

- Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Sectigo CA



- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Comodo Certificate Manager**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Comodo Certificate Manager.
- Enter/Select the CA details.

Field description for CA Details

Field	Description
* CA Accounts	The Sectigo CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Certificate Type	The certificate types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more certificate type(s) from the list to create the policy.
* Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Click **Add**.
The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use **the Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

CA Settings	Certificate Type	Edit	Remove
Sectigo	Comodo PlatinumSSL Wildcard Certificate (customized for United Parcel Service)		
	Comodo Unified Communication Certificate (customized for United Parcel Service)		
	EliteSSL Certificate (customized for United Parcel Service)		

7. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).

The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New, Renew, Regenerate**.


8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.


The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New, Renew, Regenerate**.

9. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

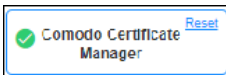
Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .

Field	Description
	<div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	<p>Enter the organization name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>Enter the email address of the organization unit.</p>


Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)</p> </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Comodo Certificate Manager** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.




11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.

 **Note:** A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click **Create Policy** to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Symantec CA

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Symantec**.
The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Symantec.
- Enter/Select the CA details.

Field description for CA Details

Field	Description
* CA Account	The Symantec CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Certificate Type	The certificate types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more certificate type(s) from the list to create the policy.
* Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select the server type from the dropdown list.
- Click **Add**.
The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use **the Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
- From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).


The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

9. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.


The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

10. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

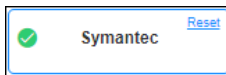
Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New , Renew , Regenerate . <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	Enter the organization name.

Field	Description
	<p>The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>Enter the locality name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>Enter the state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>Enter the country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>Enter the email address of the organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>

Field	Description
	 Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

- Click **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Symantec** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.




- From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
- From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

- Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for Trustwave CA

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **GROUPS & POLICIES** > **CA Policy**.
The **CA Policy** page is displayed.
- Click **+ Create** from the top-right corner of the page.
The **CA Policy:: Create** page is displayed.
- Refer the [Configuring Policy Details](#) section in the SIGN+ Admin Guide to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- In the **CA Details** section, from the **Certificate Authority** list in the left, select **Trustwave**.

The **CA Details** section is updated to display fields relevant to Trustwave.

5. Enter/Select the CA details.

Field description for CA Details

Field	Description
* CA Account	The Trustwave CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Certificate Type	The certificate types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more certificate type(s) from the list to create the policy.
* Validity	In the Days , Month , and Year dropdown lists, enter the validity period(s) for the certificate. You can enter more than one validity period in days/months/years, and one can then be chosen from the entered values at the time of certificate enrollment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.



CA Settings	Certificate Type	Edit	Remove
Trustwave CA_Server	SecureTrust Organization Validation SecureTrust OV Wildcard		

7. From the ***Bit Length - Key Type** dropdown list, select one (or more than one), bit length- key type pair(s).


The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected B bit length- key type pair(s) to check for compliance with the policy. The Selected bit length- key type pair(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.


8. From the ***Hash Function** dropdown list, select one (or more) hash functions.

The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected hash function to check for compliance with the policy. The selected hash function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as **New**, **Renew**, **Regenerate**.

9. Enter/Select the **Certificate parameters** values.

Field description for certificate parameters

Field	Description
Restrict Wild Card Certificate	Slide toggle switch to the ON position to restrict the creation of wild card certificates using the policy.
Host name	Enter the host name. The host name cannot start and end with a . (period)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. Multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	Enter the common name. For example, *.domain.com This enforces domains for which a certificate can be requested. The common name is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate . <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period) </div>
Organization	Enter the organization name. The discovered certificate's subject organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to check for compliance. The organization is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Organization Unit	Enter the organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to check for compliance. Organization Unit is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Locality	Enter the locality name.

Field	Description
	The discovered certificate's locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to check for compliance. The locality is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
State	Enter the state. The discovered certificate's state will be compared against the state provided in the policy to check for compliance. The state is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Country code	Enter the country code. The discovered certificate's country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to check for compliance. Country code is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Email	Enter the email address of the organization unit. The discovered certificate's email address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to check for compliance. The email address is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .
Subject Alternative Name	Enter the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. The SAN is enforced at the time of performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate .  Note: Use the * (asterisk) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed special characters: *(Asterisk), - (hyphen), . (period)
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration.

A green tick mark is displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Trustwave** to indicate that the details are successfully stored.



11. From the **Group selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy.
12. From the **Compliance Check** section, to perform an immediate compliance check, enable **Perform Compliance check**.



Note: A scheduled compliance check will run periodically based on the settings defined in the [job scheduler](#).

13. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Signing Policy

A signing policy, in the context of code signing and security practices, refers to a set of rules, guidelines, and procedures that govern how digital signatures are applied to software, scripts, or other digital assets.

Signing policies are typically defined and implemented within organizations to ensure the secure and consistent application of digital signatures. These policies are a fundamental part of a broader security strategy and are important for various reasons:

Security Assurance: Signing policies help ensure the security of software and digital assets by specifying who can sign code, what can be signed, and under what circumstances. They establish a framework for mitigating risks associated with unauthorized or malicious code modifications.

Authentication: Signing policies often dictate the use of code signing certificates issued by trusted certificate authorities (CAs). These certificates verify the identity of the signer, adding a layer of authentication to the signed code. This helps establish trust in the source of the software.

Integrity: Policies define the conditions under which code should be signed. By adhering to these policies, organizations maintain the integrity of their codebase, as any unauthorized changes or tampering will result in the invalidation of the digital signature.

Non-Repudiation: Code signing with adherence to policies provides non-repudiation, meaning that the signer cannot deny their involvement in the signing process. This is crucial for accountability and legal purposes.

Compliance: Many industries and regulatory bodies require organizations to adhere to specific code signing practices. Signing policies help ensure compliance with these regulations, which is especially important in sectors like healthcare, finance, and government.

Version Control: Policies can specify how versioning should be managed for signed code. This helps users verify the authenticity and integrity of software updates and patches.

Key Aspects Covered by Signing Policies

A signing policy plays a crucial role in an organization's cybersecurity strategy by fostering trust, preserving code integrity, and mitigating the risk of malware and security breaches. It provides explicit guidelines for secure code signing practices, making it an essential component of secure software development and distribution. Key aspects of security addressed by signing policies include:

Authorized Signers: Signing policies are used to determine authorized personnel, identifying individuals within the organization authorized to sign code or digital assets, which may include specific developers or security team members.

Signing Environment: Secure code signing environments identify and include environments and systems that are secure and trusted.

Certificate Usage: Managing code signing certificates addresses the selection and management of the certificates, often emphasizing the use of certificates issued by recognized Certificate Authorities (CAs).


Review and Approval: Code review and approval procedures ensure compliance with security and quality standards before signing.

Timestamping: Signing policies ensure valid signatures over time, implementing timestamping requirements to maintain the validity of signatures, even after the certificate's expiration.




Revocation: Signing policies outline procedures for revoking signatures in cases of compromised certificates or unauthorized code changes.

- [Configuring Signing Policy](#)

Configuring Signing Policy

1. Go to  (Menu) > SIGN+ > GROUPS & POLICIES > Signing Policy.
The **Signing Policy** page is displayed.
2. From the top-right corner of the page, click **Create**.

3. Enter/select the **Policy details**.**Field description for the Policy Details section**

Field name	Description
*Policy Name	Provide a unique name for the signing policy. No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.
*Hash Function	Select the hash function you want to configure for code signing: [Dropdown Options - SHA-256]
Timestamping	Choose a trusted timestamping authority from the dropdown list: [Dropdown Options - GlobalSign, Symantec (now part of DigiCert), Entrust SwissSign, Comodo CA (now Sectigo), DigiCert, IdenTrust, QuoVadis Global, GlobalSign Advanced, Other]. If you choose Other , kindly provide the timestamping URL .
*Signing Type	Choose between Hash Based or File Based signing
*File Types	This field is displayed only when the Signing Type is set as File Based . Select one or more file types that should be signed using the signing policy. Supported file types include PS1, EXE, CAT, MSI, JS, JAR, APK, VBS, CAB, WSF, DLL, APPX, MSIX among others. <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: Selected file types will only be permitted for upload and signing under this policy. </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: Signing operations for the HSM-based certificates for the script files will be supported by upgrading the JSign Version from 3.0 to 5.0. </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ff6347; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  Restriction: CAT files do not work with HSM-based certificates, but works for a File Based certificates. </div>
Restriction Type	Select None or between IP-based restriction or IP range-based restriction .

Field name	Description
*List of IP's	This field is displayed when the Restriction Type is set as IP . If you selected IP-based restriction , enter a list of valid individual IP addresses at subnet or system level.
*Start IP *End IP	This field is displayed when the Restriction Type is set as IP Range . If you selected an IP range-based restriction , enter the start and end IP addresses, ensuring the end IP is greater than the start IP.
Test Policy	Select the checkbox to create the policy for internal testing. Enabling this option ignores all signatures associated with the policy in the license counting.
Enable Email notification	Enable the toggle button to receive email notifications and updates via email when the signing events occur.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

4. (Optional step) If the **Enable Email notification** toggle switch is enabled then enter/select the **Email Configuration** details as described below.

Field description for the Email Configuration section

Field name	Description
*Email Subject	Enter the subject line for the email notification to identify the purpose or content of the email. Acceptable characters are letters, numbers, and spaces.
*To	Enter one or more recipients email address separated by comma.
Event Type	Choose the type of events for which notifications are required. The values are Success , Failure , or Both .
*Required Field	A multi-select dropdown field with values - Policy name , Signing Type , Key Name , IP Address , Signing Time , and Username . Select one or more values whose details are to be displayed in the mail body for comprehensive notification.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. In the **Map Signing Key** section, select the required keys from the code signing inventory and add them to map them against a policy as shown in the below images. If more than one signing key is mapped to a policy then the signing key should be chosen as an option in the Upload & Sign or the default signing key will be used for signing. Click the **Add Key** button to add the keys.

Signing Policy : Create

Map Signing Key

Select the required keys from the code signing inventory and add them to map it against a policy. If more than one signing key is mapped to a policy then signing key should be chosen as an option in the 'Upload & Sign' or the default signing key will be used for signing.

Search...

Add Key Remove 0 Entries < > ↻

<input type="checkbox"/>	Key Name	Key Type	Expiration Date
No records found.			

Add-On Fields

Add meta information that needs to be collected from the signer who requests signing. These meta information (e.g. OS version, Build version, Comments, Description, etc.,) will also be stored in the inventory along with the signed code/artifacts

Add Keys

Search...

Add Selected 1 to 15 of 15 < >

<input type="checkbox"/>	CA Name	Expiration ...	Key Name	Key Type	Serial Num...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Splunk_Priv...	09/01/2024	AppViewX ...	RSA	71:CF:08:2...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	AppViewX L...	08/26/2024	CSP Code ...	RSA	30:3D:B1:F...
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	AppViewX L...	08/26/2024	Code Signl...	RSA	B4:0A:19:8...
<input type="checkbox"/>	AppViewX L...	08/29/2024	Demo Code...	RSA	F5:64:EF:2...
<input type="checkbox"/>	AppViewX L...	09/25/2023	Demo Code...	RSA	79:41:AE:31...
<input type="checkbox"/>	Splunk_Priv...	09/12/2024	Demo Code...	RSA	E0:6B:CE:8...
<input type="checkbox"/>	AppViewX L...	09/25/2023	Demo Code...	RSA	5D:CF:65:5...
<input type="checkbox"/>	Splunk_Priv...	08/28/2024	OCA Code ...	RSA	2E:6B:2B:E...

6. In the **Add-On Fields** section, add meta information that needs to be collected from the signer who requests for signing. This meta information (e.g. OS version, build version, comments, description, etc.,) will also be stored in the inventory along with the signed code/artifacts. Enter values in the **Field Name** and **Field Type** fields and select the **Make Mandatory** checkbox as required.

Add-On Fields

Add meta information that needs to be collected from the signer who requests for signing. These meta information (e.g. OS version, Build version, Comments, Description, etc..) will also be stored in the inventory along with the signed code/artifacts

* Field Name ⓘ

* Field Type ⓘ

* Make Mandatory ⓘ

🔍 Search... 1 to 1 of 1

	Meta Name	Type	Mandatory	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	testfieldname	text	Yes	

7. Click **Add**.

The **Add-On Fields** will be added in the meta information table.

8. Click **Create**.

The signing policy is created in the inventory.

What to do next:

- [Upload and sign](#) the code signing file with the specified file type selected during policy creation.

Sign Logs

In the realm of code signing, audit logs play a fundamental role in ensuring the security, integrity, and transparency of the entire signing process. These logs

- Serve as a comprehensive record of critical activities and events related to code signing operations
- Provide invaluable insights into the provenance and legitimacy of code signatures
- The instrumental in helping organizations meet compliance requirements, prevent security breaches, and trace the history of code signing activities.

Audit logs within the context of code signing encompass a wide array of information, including the

- Details of code signature creation, updates, and other relevant information
- Essential data such as the digital certificates used in the signing process
- Timestamps of each operation
- The identity of the signatory.

By preserving this information, audit logs enable organizations to verify the authenticity of signed code and to identify any suspicious or unauthorized activities that may compromise the security of their software. The visibility provided by these logs is crucial for both internal security practices and compliance with regulatory standards, ultimately ensuring the trustworthiness of code and the safety of end-users.

- [Viewing Sign Logs](#)
- [Exporting Logs](#)

Viewing Sign Logs

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **Sign Logs** > **Sign Logs**.

The **Logging** page is displayed with the **Sign** tab open by default.

2. Use the following filters to display limited data:
 - Search by text field
 - Search by time icon (date and time)
 - Search by **Method of Login** dropdown.

This page displays the following details:



Field description of Sign Logs table

Fields	Description
Time	Date and time at which the activity was carried out.
User	Username of the user who performed the activity.
Severity	Severity of the activity logged (Notification, Debug, Warn, Error, Fatal, Critical).
Category	Name of the module. In this case - Sign.
Method of login	Indicates the type of signing. UI is for a file-based signing (File upload and sign) and API is for a hash-based sign.
Log message	Description of the activity logged.

Fields	Description
Source IP	IP of the device from where the action was performed.
AppViewX node	IP:node of the AppViewX server from where the action was performed.

Exporting Logs


AppViewX lets you export logs as Excel sheets.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **Sign Logs** > **Sign Logs**.
The **Logging** page is displayed with the **Sign** tab open by default.
2. From the top right corner of the page, click  (**Export**) icon.
3. Navigate to the location to save the log file, and click **Save**.
All logs of the sign type are downloaded and saved.

Password Vault

The password vault is used to store all certificate passwords of selected ADC devices. All the password-protected certificates that are discovered, will be decrypted and pushed to the discovery grid in the AppViewX Inventory. This happens only if passwords are matched with passwords that are stored in the vault.

Before you Begin: To decrypt the password-protected certificates, ensure that you have a valid certificate password.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Password Vault**.
The **Password Vault** page is displayed.
2. In the **General Information** section, enter an **Identity Name** for the password you want to add in the vault.
3. From the **Device Name** dropdown, select the ADC device whose password-protected certificate details you want to store.
4. In the **File Name** field, enter a certificate file name to help users identify it.
5. In the **Password** field, enter the password that is associated with the certificate.
6. Click **Save**.

7. To import a file (in XLS or CSV format) with a list of all certificate passwords, from the top-right corner of the page, click **Import**.

The **Password Vault : Upload** page is displayed.

This option is used to store the certificate passwords directly in the vault instead of adding them manually.

8. To export all stored certificate passwords from the vault as a zip file to your local system, from the top-right corner of the page, click **Export Password**.
9. To modify the existing details, click **Edit**.
To update the password, click **Update**.
- To delete the password details, click **Delete**.

Configuring Certificate Attributes and Tags

- [Adding Attribute Information](#)
- [Updating Certificate Attributes](#)

- [Deleting Certificate Attributes](#)
- [Viewing Certificate Attributes in Certificate Inventory](#)

Adding Attribute Information

SIGN+ uses certificate attributes for creating additional placeholder fields that can be used to track a certificate. An administrator can create one or more fields that a requester enrolling a certificate can fill and use for future tracking.



Remember:

- Certificate attributes are CA or organization-specific attributes, apart from the CSR parameters.
- Once configured, these attributes will be shown to collect values during certificate enrollment.
- Business units specific parameters can be stored for quick filtering and auditing.

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Attributes and Tags**.

The **Certificate Attributes** page is displayed.

2. Click **Add New** from certificate attributes section.

The **Certificate Attributes** pop-up window is displayed.

3. Enter/Select the **Certificate Attributes** values.

Field description for the certificate attributes configuration parameters

Field	Description
*Key ID	Unique key for the attribute.
*Label Name	Attribute name which will be shown during certificate enrollment. Eg. email contact, owner.
Field Type	Selected field type will be as text in the certificate Attribute type in the enrolment page.
Mandatory	Enable this field if the default value must be mandatory.
Default Value	Set a default value for the attribute.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

4. Click **Save**.

The certificate attribute is added.

Updating Certificate Attributes

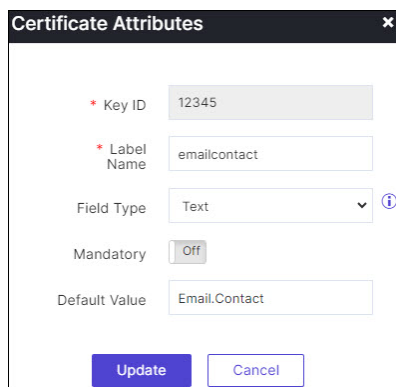
1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Attributes and Tags**.

The **Certificate Attributes** page is displayed.

2. From the **Actions** column, click  (**Edit**) icon.

The **Certificate Attributes** update pop-up is displayed.

3. Edit the certificate attribute configuration.



The dialog box titled "Certificate Attributes" contains the following fields and controls:

- Key ID:** Text input field with value "12345".
- Label Name:** Text input field with value "emailcontact".
- Field Type:** Dropdown menu with "Text" selected and an information icon.
- Mandatory:** Toggle switch set to "Off".
- Default Value:** Text input field with value "Email.Contact".
- Buttons:** "Update" (blue) and "Cancel" (white) buttons at the bottom.

4. Click **Update**.

The certificate attribute is updated.

Deleting Certificate Attributes

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Attributes**.

The **Certificate Attributes** page is displayed.

2. From the **Actions** column, click  (**Delete**) icon.


A confirmation dialog box is displayed.


3. Click **Delete**.

The certificate attribute is deleted.

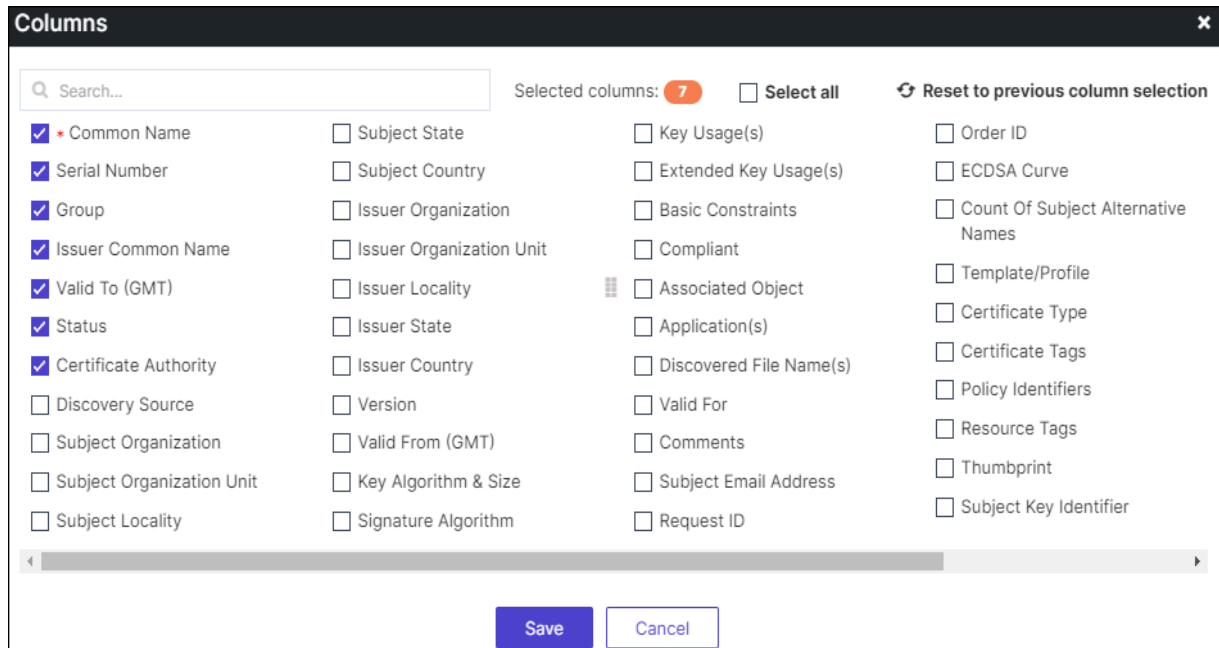
Viewing Certificate Attributes in Certificate Inventory

The configured attributes and their default values, if specified, will be shown in the certificate inventory along with the rest of the certificate details.

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **CERTIFICATE INVENTORY** > **Code Signing**.
The **Code Signing Certificate** page is displayed.

- Click  **Columns** (**Columns**) icon.

Select certificate attributes to display in the certificate inventory.



Columns

Search...

Selected columns: **7** Select all

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> * Common Name	<input type="checkbox"/> Subject State	<input type="checkbox"/> Key Usage(s)	<input type="checkbox"/> Order ID
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Serial Number	<input type="checkbox"/> Subject Country	<input type="checkbox"/> Extended Key Usage(s)	<input type="checkbox"/> ECDSA Curve
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Group	<input type="checkbox"/> Issuer Organization	<input type="checkbox"/> Basic Constraints	<input type="checkbox"/> Count Of Subject Alternative Names
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Issuer Common Name	<input type="checkbox"/> Issuer Organization Unit	<input type="checkbox"/> Compliant	<input type="checkbox"/> Template/Profile
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Valid To (GMT)	<input type="checkbox"/> Issuer Locality	<input type="checkbox"/> Associated Object	<input type="checkbox"/> Certificate Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Issuer State	<input type="checkbox"/> Application(s)	<input type="checkbox"/> Certificate Tags
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Certificate Authority	<input type="checkbox"/> Issuer Country	<input type="checkbox"/> Discovered File Name(s)	<input type="checkbox"/> Policy Identifiers
<input type="checkbox"/> Discovery Source	<input type="checkbox"/> Version	<input type="checkbox"/> Valid For	<input type="checkbox"/> Resource Tags
<input type="checkbox"/> Subject Organization	<input type="checkbox"/> Valid From (GMT)	<input type="checkbox"/> Comments	<input type="checkbox"/> Thumbprint
<input type="checkbox"/> Subject Organization Unit	<input type="checkbox"/> Key Algorithm & Size	<input type="checkbox"/> Subject Email Address	<input type="checkbox"/> Subject Key Identifier
<input type="checkbox"/> Subject Locality	<input type="checkbox"/> Signature Algorithm	<input type="checkbox"/> Request ID	

- Click **Save**.

The selected certificate attributes will be displayed in the certificate inventory.

Configuring Certificate Profiles

AppViewX **SIGN+** offers administrators the capability to define the type or purpose of a certificate through certificate profiles. An administrator can configure multiple profiles defining the key usage and extended key usage for a certificate enrolled through AppViewX. The profiles defined are applicable on certificates enrolled through AppViewX CA or Custom CA.



Note: An administrator can white label AppViewX CA through Custom CA.

**Remember:**

- Certificate profiles configure key usage extensions that define the purpose of the public key contained in a certificate.
- Once configured, these profiles will be used to define key usage and extended key usage while the signing a CSR through AppViewX CA and white labeled AppViewX CA or Custom CA.
- Sign+ comes prebuilt with profiles corresponding to a standard code signing certificate.

- [Adding a Certificate Profile](#)
- [Updating a Certificate Profile](#)
- [Deleting a Certificate Profile](#)

Adding a Certificate Profile

1. Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Profile**.

The **Certificate Profile** page is displayed.

Certificate Profile				+ Add	Configure Role Synchronization	↻
Name	Purpose/Usage	Key Usage(s)	Extended Key Usage(s)			
Server	Server	Digital Signature,Key Encipherment	Server Authentication,Client Authentication			
Client	Client	Digital Signature,Non Repudiation,Key Encipherment	Client Authentication,Email Protection			
CodeSigning	CodeSigning	Digital Signature	Code Signing			
OcspSigning	Server	Digital Signature	OCSP Signing			

2. From the top-right corner of the screen, click **+ Add**.
3. Enter/Select the **General Information** details.

Field Description for General Information

Fields	Description
Name	<p>Unique name to identify the profile.</p> <p>Validation: Profile name should not start with special characters. Can contain only alphanumeric characters, no special characters except -, _, . are allowed.</p>
Purpose/Usage	<p>Certificate type to which the Key Usage extensions are signed with.</p>

4. Configure **Key Usages** for the certificate profile.

Field Description for Key Usages

Fields	Description
Critical	Enable this field to sign the key usage extensions as critical .
*Key Usage(s)	Key usage extensions with which the CSR is signed.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Configure **Extended Key Usages** for the certificate profile.

Field Description for Extended Key Usages

Fields	Description
Critical	Enable this field to sign the extended key usage extensions as critical .
*Extended Key Usage(s)	Extended key usage extensions with which the CSR is signed.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Enter the **Policy ID**.

7. Click **Save**.

The certificate profile is added.

Updating a Certificate Profile

To update certificate profile settings:

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Profile**.


The **Certificate Profile** page is displayed.

2. Click the **Name** of the profile to be edited.
3. Edit the certificate profile as required.
4. Click **Update**.

The certificate profile is updated.

Deleting a Certificate Profile

To delete the certificate profile settings:

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Certificate Profile**.
The **Certificate Profile** page is displayed.

2. For the profile to be deleted, click the  (**Delete**) icon.

Key Usage(s)	Extended Key Usage(s)	
Digital Signature, Key Encipherment	Server Authentication, Client Authentication	
Digital Signature, Non Repudiation, Key Encipherment	Client Authentication, Email Protection	
Digital Signature	Code Signing	
Digital Signature	OCSP Signing	


The **Delete Confirmation** popup is displayed.


3. Click **Yes**.

The certificate profile is deleted.

Expired Certificates

AppViewX SIGN+ gives you options to delete the expired certificates, along with the root and intermediate ones. Certificates are deleted after they are expired based on the configured date.

 **Tip:** A best practice during certificate discovery is to apply a rule to avoid the discovery of expired certificates.

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Expired Certificates**.
The **Expired Certificates** page is displayed.

Expired Certificates

Expired certificate

Do you want to delete the expired certificates? Yes No

Expired root and intermediate certificate

Do you want to delete the expired root and intermediate certificates? Yes No

2. In the **Expired certificate** section, enter/select the details to configure the deletion of expired certificates.

Field	Description
*Number of days after expiry	Enter the number of days after expiry after which the expired certificates will be deleted.
Backup Required	By default, this is set to NO . To enable the backup, select Yes . The fields Backup Limit and Deletion Batch Limit are displayed.
*Backup Limit	Enter a numeric value for the backup limit of the expired certificates.
*Deletion Batch Limit	Enter a numeric value for the deletion batch limit of the expired certificates.
Do you want to delete the certificates from all groups?	By default, the deletion of expired certificates from all group is enabled. To disable this, select No . The Certificate Group dropdown list is displayed.

Field	Description
* Certificate Group	To delete the expired certificates from only specific groups,select the required certificate group(s) from this dropdown list.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- In the **Expired root and intermediate certificate** section, to delete the expired root and intermediate certificates, select **Yes**.
- In the **Number of days after expiry** field, enter the number of days after certificate expiry after which the expired root and intermediate certificates will be deleted.

History of Certificates

SIGN+ lets you retain the history of old certificates before the renew/ regenerate/ reissue action. The history will be available in the inventory and can be tracked in the holistic view as well.

- Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **History of Certificates**.

The **History of Certificates** page is displayed.

By default, the application retains the history of certificates.

- To disable the retention of certificate history, click **No**.
- In the **Number of days to delete certificates after its renew/reissue/regeneration** field, enter the number of days after which the certificates will be deleted.
- Click **Save**.

Job Scheduler

The job scheduler lets you configure a host of tasks to manage certificate actions, perform validation checks, and monitor the logs for various actions.

List of Schedulable Tasks

S. No	Task Name	Description
1	Auto Regenerate Certificates	Automatically regenerates the configured certificates
2	Auto Renew Certificates	Automatically renews the configured certificates


List of Schedulable Tasks (continued)

S. No	Task Name	Description
3	CA Connector Validity Updater	Updates the CA connector with maximum validity offered by the CA for server certificates
4	CRL Certificate Revocation Check	CRLs for all certificates in the inventory are downloaded for a revocation check
5	CRL Download Monitor Job	Monitors every five minutes to check for CRLs to download
6	Certificate Authority Connection Check	Checks connection with all configured Certificate Authority settings
7	Certificate CAA Record Check	Fetch data for certificate CAA report.
8	Certificate Expiry Status Check	Updates the expiry status in certificate every day
9	Certificate Polling Request	Configure the polling request for fetching certificate details from CA.
10	Certificate Revoke Status Check From CA	Retrieving the certificate revocation status issued or renewed by the CA.
11	Certificate Transparency Check	Fetch data for Certificate Transparency Report.
12	Certificate Vulnerability Check	Fetch the vulnerability details from certificate endpoints.
13	Certificate compliance check	Validate certificates in the inventory for compliance.
14	Certificate validation check	Validate trust details for all certificates in the inventory.
15	Deletes Expired Certificates	Deletes expired certificates
16	Delete Renew/Reissue/Regenerate Certificates	Deletes renewed/reissued/regenerated certificates
17	Device and Cert Sync Status job	Periodically executed to verify the status of the device and certificate sync job
18	Device and Certificate synchronization	Check synchronization of devices and their certificates.

List of Schedulable Tasks (continued)

S. No	Task Name	Description
19	Fetch End Entity Profile From CA	Retrieve end entity profiles from certificate authority.
20	Periodic CRL Update for AppViewX and Custom CAs	Updates CRL of AppViewX and Custom CAs revoked certificates.
21	Pkiaas AEP Purge log Job	Purge the user/device logs older than 24 hours.
22	Pkiaas OCSP Sync Job	Updates revoked cert details in cache
23	Update Certificate Cipher Suite Report	Updates the Certificate Cipher Suite Report
24	Update Certificate Expiration Report	Updates the Certificate Expiration Report
25	Update Certificate Orphan Report	Updates the Certificate Orphan Report
26	Update Count By Issuer Report	Updates the Count By Issuer Report
27	Update Expiry Report By Month	Updates the Expiry Report By Month
28	Update Policy Compliance Report	Updates the Policy Compliance Report
29	Update Report By Certificate Authority	Updates the Report By Certificate Authority
30	Update Report By Source	Updates the Report By Source
31	Update Stale Certificate Report	Updates the Stale Certificate Report
32	Update Validation status Report	Updates the Validation Status Report
33	Vulnerability CAA Record Generation Complete Scan	Vulnerability CAA Record Generation
34	Vulnerability CAA Record Generation Delta Scan	Vulnerability CAA Record Generation
35	Vulnerability Compliance Generation	Vulnerability Compliance Generation for ROCA and Key Strength
36	Vulnerability Endpoint Validation Generation	Vulnerability Endpoint Validation Generation - NMAP SCAN Heart Bleed, Poodle, Cipher TLS
37	Vulnerability Group Metrics Generation	Certificate Group Metrics Generation

The process to create a scheduled task is the same for all the above tasks. As an example, we'll schedule the **Auto Regenerate Certificates** task.

- Go to  (Menu) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Job Scheduler**.
The **Job Scheduler** page is displayed.
- From the **Task Name** column, click the task you want to schedule. For this example, select **Auto Regenerate Certificates**.
The **Auto Regenerate Certificates** pop-up window is displayed.
- Enter/Select the details required to automatically regenerate certificates.

Field description for parameters for automatically regenerating certificates

Field	Description
*Description	This field is usually pre-populated with a text description. However, you can modify the description as required.
*Time Zone	Select the required timezone that suits your requirement from the dropdown.
*Occurrence Type	To define how frequently certificates will be auto regenerated, from the dropdown list, select a occurrence type .
*Starts on	Based on the occurrence type selected, to schedule the task, use the calendar widget to set the date and time details.
Repeat	Select the number of times for which the task will be repeated, from the start date.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Click **Update**.
The task is updated with the parameters set, which are displayed in the respective columns on the **Job Scheduler** page.



Note: Scroll to the right to view the **Actions** column.

- To enable/disable the tasks, from the **Actions** column, use the **Enable/Disable** toggle.
- To trigger any of the tasks immediately, from the **Actions** column, click the **TriggerNow**.

Email Settings

SIGN+ includes email setting templates for certification action request. You can customize email IDs for each of the certification action requests. Once you have configured the email settings, emails will be automatically sent to the designated email addresses.

To configure the email settings:

1. Go to  (**Menu**) > **SIGN+** > **ADMINISTRATION** > **Email Settings**.

The **Email Settings** page is displayed.

2. Click on the required certification action request.
3. In the **submission**, **level1ApprovalTo**, and **level2ApprovalTo** fields, enter valid email IDs.

You can customize the field names by clicking the field name and entering your preferred names.

Additionally, you can add more fields by clicking the **Add** button from the top-right corner of the **Email Settings** page. If any of the fields are not required, you can remove them by clicking the delete icon.



Note: You can enter multiple email addresses, separated by commas.

4. Click **Save Changes**.

Chapter 3: SIGN+ API Guide

This guide provides information about the AppViewX exposed APIs intended for use in **SIGN+** actions.

- [Understanding the AppViewX Sign+ API](#)
- [Login API with User Account](#)
- [Accessing API with Service Account](#)
- [Code Signing with Upload & Sign](#)
- [Download Code Signed Files](#)
- [Generate Hash for Code Signing](#)

Understanding the AppViewX Sign+ API

The AppViewX API is a programmatic way to get data in and out of the AppViewX subsystems. With access to RESTful AppViewX APIs, you can leverage the raw potential of AppViewX. It provides a powerful way to channel the data into native business applications. This document comprises of module-wise APIs used in AppViewX.

RESTful HTTPS Requests

Type	Description
GET	GET requests, retrieve resource representation/information only and not to modify it.
POST	POST APIs create new subordinate resources. For example, a file is subordinate to a directory containing it or a row is subordinate to a database table. In terms of REST, POST methods are used to create a new resource into the collection of resources.
PUT	PUT APIs are used to update existing resources (if a resource does not exist then API may decide whether to create a new resource or not).
DELETE	DELETE APIs are used to delete resources (identified by the Request-URI).

Requests

Each endpoint URL is built in the same way by the following structure:

```
http://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/<Endpoint>?<gwsources>
```

Understanding the sample URL

- **IP/HostName/TenantName:** Replace with the actual IP address, hostname, or tenant name based on the specific configuration in AppViewX.

- **IP:** A unique identifier assigned to each device connected to a computer network that uses the Internet Protocol for communication

The IP address will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **HostName:** A human-readable label assigned to a device (host) on a network

The hostname will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **TenantName:** An identifier label for a tenant given to indicate which tenant's data the API request will access/modify

The tenant name will be included in the endpoint URL for a SaaS deployment.

- **GWPORT:** AppViewX gateway port

A gateway port refers to a network port through which data is sent and received to communicate with a gateway in an on-prem deployment.

Example: **31443**

- **avxapi:** Path parameter value (static) that is part of the endpoint's URL
- **Endpoint:** Endpoint of the API, for example: **execute-hook**
- **gwsouce:** Source or origin of a gateway, for example: **external**.

Request Structure

All endpoints accept a request structure that should consist of JSON formatted data. To ensure the request is accepted, set the header **Content-Type: application/json**.

The following example shows a request to add a resource:

```
{
  "payload": {
    "name": "resource_1",
    "description": "This is a sample resource."
  }
}
```

Response Structure

The Content-Type of the response is typically determined by the Content-Type header, and for most endpoints, it will be application/json. All requests that reach the server, regardless of the response code, will retrieve a response body. A successful request will contain a body with the requested information, for example:

```
https://appviewxapi.com/avxapi/resource?gwsource=external
```

Returns the following JSON structure that a resource is added:

```
{
  "response": "Resource added successfully",
  "message": "Resource added successfully",
  "appStatusCode": null,
  "tags": null,
  "headers": null
}
```

Description of Server Responses

HTTP Code	Response Message
200 OK	The request was successful (some API calls may return 201 or 202 instead).
400 Bad Request	The request is not understood or required parameters are missing.
401 Unauthorized	Authentication failed or the user doesn't have permissions for the requested operation.
409 Forbidden	Access denied.
404 Not Found	Resource not found.
429 Too many requests	The number of requests to the service has crossed the threshold.
503 Service unavailable	The client cannot communicate with the service.
504 Gateway timeout	The given request has exceeded the expected time.

URI Scheme

- **Host** : {url}
- **BasePath** : /avxapi
- **Schemes** : HTTPS
- **URL** : https://{url}/avxapi

Types of Accounts in AppViewX

There are two types of accounts in AppViewX:

- **User Accounts**: These are used by actual users.
- **Service Accounts**: These are used by system services such as web servers, automation tools, and so on.

AppViewX recommends using a Service Account for accessing APIs from automation tools. Service Accounts are supported with oAuth standard for a more secure and standard way of accessing APIs.



Note: AppViewX supports both User Account and Service Account for accessing APIs.

Login API with User Account

For accessing APIs with a user account, you need to get the session ID by providing a username and password in the login API. This session ID can then be used for accessing other APIs.



Note: You can also use the username and password in all API calls instead of the sessionId. However, this is not recommended.

- [Retrieve session ID using login API](#)
- [Using Session ID for further API calls](#)

Retrieve session ID using login API

This API used to retrieve the session ID using the login API for secure authentication and access to system resources.

Before you begin

- Make sure you have valid login credentials (Username and Password) for accessing the system.
- You cannot use OAuth credentials (Client ID and Client Secret) for login.
- To access the APIs using the service token, use the [API with the Service Account](#).

Request Structure

Endpoint	/login
Type	POST
Sample URL	https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/login?gwsource=external
Headers	
Content-Type	application/json
Request timeout period	15 minutes

Understanding the sample URL

- **IP/HostName/TenantName:** Replace with the actual IP address, hostname, or tenant name based on the specific configuration in AppViewX.
 - **IP:** A unique identifier assigned to each device connected to a computer network that uses the Internet Protocol for communication

The IP address will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **HostName:** A human-readable label assigned to a device (host) on a network

The hostname will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **TenantName:** An identifier label for a tenant given to indicate which tenant's data the API request will access/modify

The tenant name will be included in the endpoint URL for a SaaS deployment.

- **GWPORT:** AppViewX gateway port

A gateway port refers to a network port through which data is sent and received to communicate with a gateway in an on-prem deployment.

Example: **31443**

- **avxapi**: Path parameter value (static) that is part of the endpoint's URL
- **Endpoint**: Endpoint of the API, for example: **execute-hook**
- **gwsouce**: Source or origin of a gateway, for example: **external**.

Input Parameters

	Description
username	(Mandatory) Use login name of the user.
<i>Header</i>	<p>Type: String</p> <p>Example: "admin"</p>
password	(Mandatory) Password for the username.
<i>Header</i>	<p>Type: String</p> <p>Example: "AppViewX@123"</p>
otp	(Mandatory only if MFA is enabled) If MFA is enabled, enter the OTP received on your registered email ID in the header.
<i>Header</i>	<p>Multifactor authentication (MFA) is a security mechanism that requires users to provide two or more verification factors to gain access to a resource</p> <p>If MFA is enabled, and you try to login with only the username and password, you will get the following error upon execution of the API: MFA is enabled. We have sent an OTP to your email ID: aaa*****r@appviewx.com. In this case, ensure that the OTP is included in the header and try logging in again.</p> <p>Type: String</p> <p>Example: "OTP : 609700"</p>
Content-Type	(Mandatory) The parameter should be set to <code>application/json</code> to specify the nature of the data in the payload.
<i>Header</i>	<p>Type: String</p> <p>Example: "application/json"</p>

Input Parameters (continued)

	Description
gwsource	(Mandatory) Source from which the request is triggered. The values can be:
<i>Query</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • web • external
	Type: String

Response Structure

- **Status Code:** 200 Ok
- **Message:** Login Successful
- **Headers:**
 - **Content-Type:** application/json

Response Parameters

Name	Description
response	The response contains the attributes needed to retrieve the session ID.
message	Success message or failure description in case of error.
appStatusCode	Application specific status code for the response. Will be non-null for failure response.
tags	More info in case of failure response.

Name	Description
status	Indicates the overall status of the response. The values can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SUCCESS • FAILURE
appStatusCode	An application-specific status code, if applicable.
statusDescription	Description of the status, if available.
sessionId	Unique identifier for the session.

Name	Description
lockDownPeriod	Number of login attempts remaining.
termsAccepted	
passwordExpiryMsg	
emailId	

Status Codes

HTTP Code	appStatusCode	Response Message
200 OK	NA	Login successful
400 Bad request	ACCT_AUTH_001	Username or password cannot be null or empty.
401 Unauthorized	ACC_AUTH_022	Login failed. Invalid credentials.
401 Unauthorized	ACC_AUTH_006	Login failed. Invalid credentials.

Sample Request/Response

Use Case

Login to the application with a username and password.

Request URL

```
https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/login?gwsourc=external
```

Request Payload

```
{}
```

Sample Response

```
{
  "response": {
    "status": "SUCCESS",
    "appStatusCode": null,
    "statusDescription": null,
    "sessionId": "avx--c73a4f56-f4ab-4cdf-aadf-6d90bf406077",
    "authCode": null,
    "lockDownPeriod": 15,
    "emailId": null,
    "termsAccepted": true,
  }
}
```

```

"passwordExpiryMsg": ""
},
"message": "Login successful.",
"appStatusCode": null,
"tags": null,
"headers": null
}

```

Using Session ID for further API calls

The sessionID retrieved using the login API can be used in the header for making further API calls.

Before you begin

- Session ID is obtained from the login API.
- Ensure that the session ID is valid and has not expired.

Request Structure

Endpoint:	/role
Type:	POST
Sample URL:	https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/role?&gwsource=external
Headers:	
Content-Type:	application/json

Understanding the sample URL

- **IP/HostName/TenantName:** Replace with the actual IP address, hostname, or tenant name based on the specific configuration in AppViewX.
- **IP:** A unique identifier assigned to each device connected to a computer network that uses the Internet Protocol for communication

The IP address will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **HostName:** A human-readable label assigned to a device (host) on a network

The hostname will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **TenantName:** An identifier label for a tenant given to indicate which tenant's data the API request will access/modify

The tenant name will be included in the endpoint URL for a SaaS deployment.

- **GWPORT:** AppViewX gateway port

A gateway port refers to a network port through which data is sent and received to communicate with a gateway in an on-prem deployment.

Example: **31443**

- **avxapi:** Path parameter value (static) that is part of the endpoint's URL
- **Endpoint:** Endpoint of the API, for example: **execute-hook**
- **gwsource:** Source or origin of a gateway, for example: **external**.

Input Parameters

Name	Description
sessionId <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) Use session ID retrieved from login API, if username and password are not provided. Type: <i>String</i> Example: "sessionId": "ce7f1a14-2bf9-4e4a-89a8-bc780a255813"
gwsource <i>Query</i>	(Mandatory) Source from which the request is triggered. The values can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • web • external Type: <i>String</i>
Payload <i>String</i>	(Mandatory) Input data for request body in application/json format. For payload details, see Payload section.

Payload

Name	Description
name	(Mandatory) Name of the role to be added.

Payload (continued)

Name	Description
<i>String</i>	Example: "role_1"
description	(Optional) Description of the role to be added.
<i>String</i>	Example: "Adding a new role"

Response Structure

- **Status Code:** 201 Created
- **Message:** Role added successfully
- **Headers:**
 - **Content-Type:** application/json

Response Parameters

Name	Description
response	Contains the response attributes for role added successfully.
message	Success message or failure description in case of error.
appStatusCode	Application specific status code for the response. Will be non-null for failure response.
tags	More info in case of failure response.

Status Codes

HTTP Code	appStatusCode	Response Message
201 Created	null	Role added successfully.
409 Conflict	ACCT_RO_002	Role name already exists
400 Bad Request	VALIDATION_ERROR_0004	'name' should have at least '2' characters, Mandatory Field 'name' is missing or empty.
400 Bad Request	ACCT_RO_015	Role name invalid.

Sample Request/Response

Use Case

Using the session ID acquired from the login API to execute subsequent API calls, specifically for adding a role API.

Sample Request

```
https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/role?gwsouce=external
```

Request Payload

```
{
  "payload": {
    "name": "role_01",
    "description": "Adding a new role"
  }
}
```

Sample Response

```
{
  "response": "Role added successfully",
  "message": "Role added successfully",
  "appStatusCode": null,
  "tags": null,
  "headers": null
}
```

Accessing API with Service Account

For accessing APIs with a service account, you need to get the Access Token by providing Client ID and Client Secret in get-service-token API. This Access Token can then be used for accessing other APIs.



Note: Access Token Validity is 30 minutes by default and it can be configured in **Settings > Authentication > oAuth Settings**.

- [Retrieve Access Token using get-service-token API](#)
- [Using Access Token in the header for further API calls](#)

Retrieve Access Token using get-service-token API

The API provides a streamlined process for retrieving service tokens related to account management tasks.

Before you begin

- Make sure you have valid login credentials for accessing the system.

Request Structure

Endpoint:	/acctmgmt-get-service-token
Type:	POST
Sample URL:	https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/acctmgmt-get-service-token?gwsource=external
Headers:	
Content-Type:	application/json
Authentication:	Yes
Request timeout period	15 minutes

Understanding the sample URL

- **IP/HostName/TenantName:** Replace with the actual IP address, hostname, or tenant name based on the specific configuration in AppViewX.

- **IP:** A unique identifier assigned to each device connected to a computer network that uses the Internet Protocol for communication

The IP address will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **HostName:** A human-readable label assigned to a device (host) on a network

The hostname will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **TenantName:** An identifier label for a tenant given to indicate which tenant's data the API request will access/modify

The tenant name will be included in the endpoint URL for a SaaS deployment.

- **GWPORT:** AppViewX gateway port

A gateway port refers to a network port through which data is sent and received to communicate with a gateway in an on-prem deployment.

Example: **31443**

- **avxapi**: Path parameter value (static) that is part of the endpoint's URL
- **Endpoint**: Endpoint of the API, for example: **execute-hook**
- **gwsouce**: Source or origin of a gateway, for example: **external**.

Input Parameters

	Description
Authorization <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) Please form a string in this format <Client ID>:<Client Secret> and do base64 encoding. Then prepend a key 'Basic' before the encoded value. Final value should be "Basic <EncodedValue>". Type: <i>String</i> Example: "admin"
Content-Type <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) The parameter should be set to <code>application/json</code> to specify the nature of the data in the payload. Type: <i>String</i> Example: "application/json"
grant_type <i>Payload</i>	(Mandatory) Payload Type should be "Form". The value of the param should be "Client_Credentials". Type: <i>Text</i>

Response Structure

- **Status Code:** 200 Ok
- **Message:** Successful
- **Headers:**
 - **Content-Type:** application/json

Response Parameters

Name	Description
response	The response contains the attributes needed to retrieve the access token.
message	Success message or failure description in case of error.
appStatusCode	Application specific status code for the response. Will be non-null for failure response.
tags	More info in case of failure response.

Status Codes

HTTP Code	appStatusCode	Response Message
200 OK	NA	Successful
400 Bad request	ACCT_SA_003	Service account is invalid/not found::[Service account not found in the database]
400 Bad request	OAUTH_CLNT_015	Client Password is incorrect::[Invalid Client credential]
400 Bad request	ACCT_SA_001	Invalid Request::[Invalid client Id or secret]
500 Internal Server Error	avx-common-011	Error while processing.

Sample Request/Response

Use Case

Retrieve Access Token.

Request URL

```
https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/acctmgmt-get-service-token?gwsouce=external
```

Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded

Authorization: Basic

NTIxYzNhZDItZWE0ZS00NDdiLWE1MWItOTYyMWJiN2VhMTI2OjU1QVUjTk84JSpaaGd2TmZhWVVtdHZYMGRRrRWhvZ

Request Payload

Input Parameters (continued)

Name	Description
	Type: <i>String</i>
Payload <i>String</i>	(Mandatory) Input data for request body in application/json format. For payload details, see Payload section.

Payload

Name	Description
name <i>String</i>	(Mandatory) Name of the resource to create. Name cannot be duplicated. Example: "resource_1"
description <i>String</i>	(Optional) Description of the resource. Example: "This is a sample resource."

Response Structure

- **Status Code:** 201 Created
- **Message:** Resource added successfully
- **Headers:**
 - **Content-Type:** application/json

Response Parameters

Name	Description
response	Contains the response attributes for resource added successfully.
message	Success message or failure description in case of error.
appStatusCode	Application specific status code for the response. Will be non-null for failure response.
tags	More info in case of failure response.

Status Codes

HTTP Code	appStatusCode	Response Message
201 Created	null	Resource added successfully
409 Conflict	RBAC_RE_005	Resource with the given name already exists
400 Bad Request	VALIDATION_ERROR_0004	'name' should have at least '2' characters, Mandatory Field 'name' is missing or empty
400 Bad Request	VALIDATION_ERROR_0004	Invalid "name".
401 Unauthorized	AVX_GW_012	Unauthorized access, reason - Invalid Token
407 Proxy Authentication Required	AVX_GW_011	Session validation failed, reason - Session information is missing.

Sample Request/Response

Use Case

Add a resource using API with Access Token.

Sample Request

```
https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/resource?gwsource=external
```

Request Payload

```
{
  "payload": {
    "name": "resource_1",
    "description": "This is a sample resource."
  }
}
```

Sample Response

```
{
  "response": "Resource added successfully",
  "message": "Resource added successfully",
  "appStatusCode": null,
}
```

```

"tags": null,
"headers": null
}

```

Code Signing with Upload & Sign

This API is used for code signing with upload and sign. It establishes the policies and permissions that oversee the process of uploading and signing code files. Its primary purpose is to ensure a secure and authorized code signing process, playing a crucial role in preserving control and compliance throughout code deployment and execution.

Before you begin

- [Configure the signing policy](#) with relevant details, ensuring mapping to the enrolled certificate (also identified as the signing key on the signing policy page).
- The file types selected during policy creation are the only ones permitted for upload. Supported file types include: PS1, EXE, CAT, MSI, JS, JAR, APK, VBS, CAB, WSF, DLL, APPX, and MSIX.

Request Structure

Endpoint:	/code-signing-upload-sign-file-policy
Type:	POST
Sample URL:	https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/code-signing-upload-sign-file-policy? gwsources=external
Headers:	
Content-Type:	application/json

Understanding the sample URL

- **IP/HostName/TenantName:** Replace with the actual IP address, hostname, or tenant name based on the specific configuration in AppViewX.
 - **IP:** A unique identifier assigned to each device connected to a computer network that uses the Internet Protocol for communication

The IP address will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **HostName:** A human-readable label assigned to a device (host) on a network

The hostname will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **TenantName:** An identifier label for a tenant given to indicate which tenant's data the API request will access/modify

The tenant name will be included in the endpoint URL for a SaaS deployment.

- **GWPORT:** AppViewX gateway port

A gateway port refers to a network port through which data is sent and received to communicate with a gateway in an on-prem deployment.

Example: **31443**

- **avxapi:** Path parameter value (static) that is part of the endpoint's URL
- **Endpoint:** Endpoint of the API, for example: **execute-hook**
- **gwsouce:** Source or origin of a gateway, for example: **external**.

Input Parameter

Name	Description
sessionId <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) After successfully logging in, a unique identifier assigned to a user's session after successful authentication. The session ID remains valid until it expires. The session ID is a string value. Example: "ce7f1a14-2bf9-4e4a-89a8-bc780a255813"
username <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) AppViewX login username, represented as a string value. Example: "User"
password <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) AppViewX login username, represented as a string value. Example: "AppViewX@123"
Payload	(Mandatory) Input data for request body in application/json format. For payload details, see Payload section.

Payload

Name	Description
file	(Mandatory) Upload the file for code signing.

Payload (continued)

Name	Description
<i>binary</i>	Example: "binary"
fileName	(Mandatory) Name of the file which is a string value.
<i>String</i>	Example: "AppViewX.jar"
fileType	(Mandatory) Specific format of a file providing essential metadata for proper handling and processing which is a string value.
<i>String</i>	Example: "JAR"
signingPolicy	(Mandatory) Enter the signing policy for code signing which is a string value.
<i>String</i>	Example: "testPolicyByAppViewX"
signingKey	(Mandatory) Enter the signing key for code signing which is a string value.
<i>String</i>	Example: "GCA_CSP_Cert=E8:F1:1A:04:29:BF:72:44:85:2A:18:12:70:5F:74:F6:42:79:CA"
signedType	(Mandatory) Select the code signed type, a string that specifies File Based sign.
<i>String</i>	Example: "File Based Signing"
signatureType	(Optional) This ensures compliance with a designated signature format while also allowing for potential support of additional signing types in the future.
<i>String</i>	Example: "RAW"
addOnFields	(Optional) Specify additional fields needed for code signing.
<i>List<Map<String, String>></i>	Example: "addOnFields": [{"Version": "V1"}, {"Build": "1"}]

Response Structure

- **Status Code:** 200 OK
- **Message:** Successful
- **Headers:**
 - **Content-Type:** application/json

Response Parameters

Name	Description
response	Contains the response attributes for the upload and sign request.
message	Success message or failure description in case of error.
appStatusCode	Application specific status code for the response. Will be non-null for failure response.
tags	More info in case of failure response.

Status Codes

HTTP Code	appStatusCode	Response Message
200 OK	null	Successful
400 Bad Request	CODE_SIGNING_0080	Wrong Input Payload for the text fields in the text block
400 Bad Request	CODE_SIGNING_0081	Invalid Number added in the Add-ons section
400 Bad Request	CODE_SIGNING_0082	Mandatory fields are missing in the Add-ons Section
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0063	Your chosen signing type is not supported by the selected policy
403 Forbidden	CODE_SIGNING_0058	Unsupported file type is uploaded. The policy selected doesn't support uploaded file type
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0062	Ip provided is invalid
403 Forbidden	CODE_SIGNING_0031	Permissions are not there to upload file for signing
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0070	Signing Key is not mapped to the given policy.
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0073	Certificate is not present in the cert inventory
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0087	Signing Key is Revoked/Expired

HTTP Code	appStatusCode	Response Message
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0020	Error in generating the signed file
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0023	I/O Exception occurred
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0022	Error in generating the signature file
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0021	Error in updating the signed data
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_00220	Your chosen signature type is currently not supported.

Sample Request/Response

Use Case

To sign a file using **code-signing-upload-sign-file-policy** API.

Request URL

```
https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/code-signing-upload-sign-file-policy?gwsource=external
```

Request Payload

```
{
  "payload" : {
    file: (binary)
    fileName: AppViewX.jar
    fileType: JAR
    signingPolicy: testPolicyByAppViewX
    signingKey: GCA_CSP_Cert=E8:F1:1A:04:29:BF:72:44:85:2A:18:12:70:5F:74:F6:42:79:CA
    signedType: File Based Signing
    signatureType: RAW
    addOnFields: [{"Version":"V1"}, {"Build":"1"}]
  }
}
```

Sample Response

```
{
  "response": "65252c675e3734782705b4cd",
}
```

```

"message": null,
"appStatusCode": null,
"tags": null,
"headers": null
}

```

Related Information

- [Download Code Signed File.](#)

Download Code Signed Files

This API allows users to download code-signed files that have been digitally signed and verified, ensuring the integrity and authenticity of the downloaded content.

Before you begin

- Ensure successful signing of the file from the Signing Inventory
- Ensure you have the Sign ID of the code-signed file that you intend to download.

Request Structure

Endpoint:	/code-signing-download-signed-file
Type:	POST
Sample URL:	https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/code-signing-download-signed-file? gwsources=external
Headers:	
Content-Type:	application/json

Understanding the sample URL

- **IP/HostName/TenantName:** Replace with the actual IP address, hostname, or tenant name based on the specific configuration in AppViewX.
- **IP:** A unique identifier assigned to each device connected to a computer network that uses the Internet Protocol for communication

The IP address will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **HostName:** A human-readable label assigned to a device (host) on a network

The hostname will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **TenantName:** An identifier label for a tenant given to indicate which tenant's data the API request will access/modify

The tenant name will be included in the endpoint URL for a SaaS deployment.

- **GWPORT:** AppViewX gateway port

A gateway port refers to a network port through which data is sent and received to communicate with a gateway in an on-prem deployment.

Example: **31443**

- **avxapi:** Path parameter value (static) that is part of the endpoint's URL
- **Endpoint:** Endpoint of the API, for example: **execute-hook**
- **gwsources:** Source or origin of a gateway, for example: **external**.

Input Parameters

Name	Description
sessionId <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) After successfully logging in, a unique identifier assigned to a user's session after successful authentication. The session ID remains valid until it expires. The session ID is a string value. Example: "a1b2c3d4e5f6"
username <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) AppViewX login username, represented as a string value. Example: "User"
password <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) AppViewX login username, represented as a string value. Example: "AppViewX@123"
signId <i>String</i> Payload	(Mandatory) Enter the Sign ID received after signing the code, which is a string value. Example: "651baff382ca812a7cbf4baa"

Response Structure

- **Status Code:** 200 OK
- **Message:** Successful
- **Headers:**
 - **Content-Type:** application/json
- **Response:** Signed File is downloaded.

Status Codes

HTTP Code	appStatusCode	Response Message
200 Ok	null	Successful
400 Payload entered is Invalid.	VALIDATION_ERROR_0004	Input fields do not comply with the validation criteria. Please recheck the input payload::[Id is mandatory]
400 SignId entered is invalid.	VALIDATION_ERROR_0004	Invalid 'signId'
403 Invalid permissions.	CODE_SIGNING_0076	Permissions are not there to download the signed file for the given input
500 SignId does not exist.	CODE_SIGNING_0068	Sign Id Does not Exist.
500 Invalid input.	CODE_SIGNING_0069	Download action can not be performed on Hash Based Signing/Failed status entry.
500 Unavailability of resources.	CODE_SIGNING_0014	Download operation failed for the given sign id

Sample Request/Response

Use Case

To download a code signed file using Sign Id.

Request URL

```
https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/code-signing-download-signed-file?gwsource=external
```

Request Payload

```
{
  Payload : {
```

```

signId: "651baff382ca812a7cbf4baa"
}
}

```

Sample Response

```
Signed File
```

Generate Hash for Code Signing

This API is designed to generate a hash for code signing, creating cryptographic hash values for code files. These hash values act as unique fingerprints, ensuring data integrity and enhancing security throughout code signing processes.

Before you begin

- [Configure the signing policy](#) with relevant details, ensuring mapping to the enrolled certificate (also identified as the signing key on the signing policy page).

Request Structure

Endpoint:	/code-signing-generate-hash
Type:	POST
Sample URL:	https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/code-signing-generate-hash?gwsouce=external
Headers:	
Content-Type:	application/json

Understanding the sample URL

- **IP/HostName/TenantName:** Replace with the actual IP address, hostname, or tenant name based on the specific configuration in AppViewX.
 - **IP:** A unique identifier assigned to each device connected to a computer network that uses the Internet Protocol for communication

The IP address will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **HostName:** A human-readable label assigned to a device (host) on a network

The hostname will be included in the endpoint URL for an on-prem deployment.

- **TenantName:** An identifier label for a tenant given to indicate which tenant's data the API request will access/modify

The tenant name will be included in the endpoint URL for a SaaS deployment.

- **GWPORT:** AppViewX gateway port

A gateway port refers to a network port through which data is sent and received to communicate with a gateway in an on-prem deployment.

Example: **31443**

- **avxapi:** Path parameter value (static) that is part of the endpoint's URL
- **Endpoint:** Endpoint of the API, for example: **execute-hook**
- **gwsources:** Source or origin of a gateway, for example: **external**.

Input Parameter

Name	Description
sessionId <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) After successfully logging in, a unique identifier assigned to a user's session after successful authentication. The session ID remains valid until it expires. The session ID is a string value. Example: "ce7f1a14-2bf9-4e4a-89a8-bc780a255813"
username <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) AppViewX login username, represented as a string value. Example: "User"
password <i>Header</i>	(Mandatory) AppViewX login username, represented as a string value. Example: "AppViewX@123"
Payload	(Mandatory) Input data for request body in application/json format. For payload details, see Payload section.

Payload

Name	Description
signingPolicy <i>String</i>	(Mandatory) Enter the signing policy for code signing which is a string value. Example: "Test_Policy_01"

Payload (continued)

Name	Description
signingKey <i>String</i>	(Mandatory) Enter the signing key for code signing which is a string value. Example: "Google CA Code Signing Certificate_Demo=A5:09:C1:6C:3F:72:81:61:59:3A:58:EA:ED:33:11:ED:64:91:DC"
versionNumber <i>String</i>	(Mandatory) Enter the version number for code signing, which should be a string value. Example: "v1"
description <i>String</i>	(Mandatory) Description of the hash generation, provided as a string value. Example: "Hash Signing"
signedType <i>String</i>	(Mandatory) Select the code signed type, a string that specifies Hash Based sign. Example: "Hash Based Signing"
fileHashContent <i>String</i>	(Mandatory) Enter the hash file content as a string value. Example: "MDEwDQYJYIZIAWUDBAIBBQAEIPw9hz6RJNKrng4tnsFCUGKXA6qAyxRe2kFVOjdpfTMw"
signatureType <i>String</i>	(Optional) This ensures compliance with a designated signature format while also allowing for potential support of additional signing types in the future. Example: "RAW"
addOnFields <i>List<Map<String, String>></i>	(Optional) Specify additional fields needed for code signing. Example: "addOnFields": [{"Version": "V1"}, {"Build": "1"}]

Response Structure

- **Status Code:** 200 OK
- **Message:** Successful
- **Headers:**
 - **Content-Type:** application/json

Response Parameters

Name	Description
response	Contains the response attributes for generating the signature for the code signing request.
message	Success message or failure description in case of error.
appStatusCode	Application specific status code for the response. Will be non-null for failure response.
tags	More info in case of failure response.

Status Codes

HTTP Code	appStatusCode	Response Message
200 OK	null	Successful
403 Forbidden	CODE_SIGNING_0032	Permissions are not there to sign the hash of a file
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0062	IP provided is invalid
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0083	The retrieved IP address is not valid. The selected policy does not support the obtained IP address.
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0063	Your chosen signing type is not supported by the selected policy
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0056	Signing Policy Info is not present in the Database for the given input
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0070	Signing Key is not mapped to the given policy.
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0073	Certificate is not present in the cert inventory
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0021	Error in updating the signed data
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0066	Failed to convert to json string

HTTP Code	appStatusCode	Response Message
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0067	Failed to encrypt
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_0020	Error in generating the signed file
400 Bad Request	CODE_SIGNING_00222	Add-on fields are not configured for the given policy.
400 Bad Request	CODE_SIGNING_0082	Mandatory fields are missing in the Add-ons Section.
400 Bad Request	CODE_SIGNING_00225	Multiple Add-on fields within a single key-value pair is not allowed.
400 Bad Request	CODE_SIGNING_00223	Provided Add-on fields are not configured for the given policy.
400 Bad Request	CODE_SIGNING_0080	Wrong Input Payload for the text fields in the text block.
400 Bad Request	CODE_SIGNING_0081	Invalid Number added in the Add-ons section.
500 Internal Server Error	CODE_SIGNING_00220	Your chosen signature type is currently not supported.

Sample Request/Response

Use Case

To generate a hash for code signing using **code-signing-generate-hash** API.

Request URL

```
https://<IP/HostName/TenantName>:<GWPORT>/avxapi/code-signing-generate-hash?gwsouce=external
```

Request Payload

```
{
  "payload": {
    "signingPolicy": "Hash_Policy",
    "signingKey": "AppViewX Private Ltd=56:37:33:0E:B1:7D:E4:69:E7:8E:CF:83:56:59:43:93:DD:18:B4",
    "description": "Hash Signing",
    "signedType": "Hash Based Signing",
    "fileHashContent": "MDEwDQYJYIZIAWUDBAIBBQAEIPw9hz6RJNkrng4tnsFCUGKXA6qAyxRe2kFVOjdpfTMw",
    "signatureType": "RAW",
    "addOnFields": [
```

```
{
  "Version": "V1"
},
{
  "Build_No": "1"
}
]
}
}
```

Sample Response

```
{
  "response":
  "gutlcFnzbTT7slB1wrOAbMPzhgFszs8nA1DpMLE/7BcAP39vbgIOClj1rlmM6bSnBI1bJ3U3CMSWqphEu8KzN9gcCknGTyAOJxEilXOmi0P9ernL4knxoGnDe//
89/rC3drt4XqLahHF7mMKrXLCLGqg0UTpOzUM0ZxQTucz4Z2iWipH3R3wNq4gYB4EijPXkp+7D0Q2PGaliy9/1LhGzwvappbqU9QBFu3Nkr40jepEs7dGcEFYlw4
E1spH+gcJsFEAN1H3UToP6zDiBSEq0ZiwXj0mU+pJGxIG49x7jOaDJgAS+p6//l9eulwRk7Ft4NXoXwWkvYZTx2HAMz0mg==",
  "message": null,
  "appStatusCode": null,
  "tags": null,
  "headers": null
}
```

Related Information

- [Download Code Signed File.](#)